



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Hosea

Version 65

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 65

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 40

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 39

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 2.1.28

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 0.28

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 35

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links

Date: 2022-08-18

Version: 17

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	8
Hosea	8
Introduction to Hosea	9
Hosea 1	11
Hosea 2	23
Hosea 3	47
Hosea 4	53
Hosea 5	73
Hosea 6	89
Hosea 7	101
Hosea 8	118
Hosea 9	133
Hosea 10	153
Hosea 11	169
Hosea 12	182
Hosea 13	197
Hosea 14	214
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	224
Abstract Nouns	225
Active or Passive	227
Apostrophe	230
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	232
Biblical Volume	235
Direct and Indirect Quotations	239
Doublet	241
Ellipsis	243
Euphemism	246
Exclamations	248
First, Second or Third Person	250
Generic Noun Phrases	252
How to Translate Names	254
Hyperbole	258
Hypothetical Situations	262
Idiom	265
Metaphor	267
Metonymy	273
Numbers	275
Ordinal Numbers	278
Parallelism	281
Personification	284
Rhetorical Question	286
Simile	289
Symbolic Action	292
Synecdoche	294
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	296
Adam	297
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	298

adversary, enemy	299
Ahaz	300
altar	301
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	302
appoint, appointed	304
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	305
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	306
barley	307
barren, dry	308
Benjamin, Benjaminite	309
Bethel	310
blood	311
bow and arrow, a bow	313
bread	314
bride, bridal	315
brother	316
bury, buried, burial	317
call, call out	318
Canaan, Canaanite	320
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	321
command, commandment	322
confess, confession	323
covenant	324
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	326
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	327
cut off, cut down	328
David	329
deceive, lie, deception, illusions	330
delight	331
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue	332
desert, wilderness	333
devour	334
die, dead, deadly, death	335
earth, land	337
Egypt, Egyptian	338
ephod	339
Ephraim, Ephraimite	340
evil, wicked, unpleasant	341
exalt, exalted, exaltation	343
exile, exiled	344
face, facial	345
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	347
favor, favorable, favoritism	349
fear, afraid, frighten	350
feast, feasting	351
fig	352
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	353
flesh	354
forsake, forsaken, leave	355
freewill offering	356
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	357
Gilgal	359

glory, glorious, glorify	360
God	362
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	364
gold, golden	366
good, right, pleasant, better, best	367
grain offering	369
grain, grainfields	370
grape, grapevine	371
hand	372
harvest, reap	374
head	375
heart	376
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	377
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	379
hope, hoped	381
horse, warhorse, horseback	382
house, household	383
iniquity	384
Israel, Israelites	385
Jacob, Israel	387
Jehu	388
Jeroboam	389
Jotham	390
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	391
Judah	393
Judea, Judah	394
judge, judgment	395
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	397
king, kingship	399
kingdom of Israel	400
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	401
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God	403
Lebanon	405
life, live, living, alive	406
lord, Lord, master, sir	408
love, beloved	410
mercy, merciful	412
messenger	414
might, mighty, mighty works	415
mourn, mourner, weeping	416
name	417
nation	418
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	420
oil	421
olive	422
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	423
people of God	424
people, people group	425
persecute	427
pray, prayer	428
priest, priesthood	429
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials,	431

profane, profaned	432
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	433
prostitute, harlot, whored	435
proud, pride, prideful	436
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,	438
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	440
redeem, redeemer, redemption	441
repent, repentance	442
restore, restoration	444
return, turn back	445
Sabbath	446
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	448
Samaria, Samaritan	450
save, saved, safe, salvation	451
seek, search, look for	453
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	454
silver	456
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	457
son	459
spirit, wind, breath	461
statute	463
storehouse	464
strength, strengthen, strong	465
sword, swordsmen	467
temple, house, house of God	468
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	470
thresh	472
trumpet, trumpeters	473
understand, understanding, thinking	474
vine	475
vineyard	476
walk, walked	477
waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak	478
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware	479
wine, wineskin, new wine	480
wise men, advisor	481
wrath, fury	482
Yahweh	483
Contributors	485
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	485
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	491
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	492
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	493
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	493
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors	494



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Hosea

Introduction to Hosea

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Hosea

God tells Hosea to marry Gomer as a picture of how Israel relates to Yahweh (1:1–3:5)
 Israel betrays, wanders, and sins; Yahweh appeals and pleas to return to him (4:1–7:3)
 The conflict between Yahweh and Israel explained in various ways (7:4–13:8)

- Similes: oven, cake, dove, bow (7:4–16)
- Israel openly lies and rebels (8:1–14)
- The end of Israel predicted (9:1–17)
- Similes: grapes, vine, calf, lion, children, birds, and doves (10:1–11:11)
- Israel sins, betrays, and breaks alliances (11:12–12:1)
- Israel's history remembered (12:2–13:16)
- Idolatry (13:1–8)

Israel is hostile to Yahweh (13:9–16)
 Yahweh's last appeals to Israel (14:1–9)

What is the Book of Hosea about?

This book contains the prophecies of Hosea, son of Beeri. Hosea lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. He often called this kingdom Ephraim or Samaria. Hosea prophesied for about 38 years and predicted that Assyria would destroy the northern kingdom of Israel.

Hosea began to prophesy around 753 B.C., just before King Jeroboam II died. At this time, the kingdom of Israel was prosperous but spiritually weak. Hosea warned how Yahweh would punish Israel unless the people turned back to Yahweh and were faithful to him.

How should the title of this book be translated?

This book is traditionally named "The Book of Hosea" or just "Hosea." Translators may also call it "The Book About Hosea" or "The Sayings of Hosea." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of Hosea?

Although this book tells what Hosea prophesied, it is uncertain whether Hosea wrote the book himself. It was probably written after Samaria, the capital of the northern kingdom, was destroyed in 721 B.C.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why did God command Hosea to marry a prostitute?

God told Hosea to marry the prostitute Gomer. This represented how the kingdom of Israel related to Yahweh. Israel was unfaithful to Yahweh and broke the covenant with him. This is compared to a woman who is unfaithful to her husband breaks her marriage agreement with him. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy and covenant](#))

What is a lawsuit?

Many cultures have a process for resolving disputes through law courts. These legal disputes are called lawsuits. The Book of Hosea contains some legal terms. This is because Yahweh is spoken of as if he were a husband accusing his wife in court of being unfaithful to him. Part of the Book of Hosea follows the form of a lawsuit. A problem is identified (4:1), someone is accused (4:4), someone is found guilty (4:15), and the guilty ones will be punished (5:1).

Who did the people of the kingdom of Israel worship?

Israel was supposed to worship Yahweh alone. But they worshiped both Yahweh and the Canaanite gods such as Baal. This was a major reason why Yahweh judged the kingdom of Israel. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [judge](#), [judgment](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What does the phrase “the declaration of Yahweh” mean?

The prophet used the phrase “the declaration of Yahweh” to mark a message as truly coming from God.

Why are English translations of Hosea very different?

Hosea 4–14 has many problems of interpretation. Some phrases in Hosea are beyond how we currently understand the Hebrew language. Many English versions have translated these difficult sections very differently.

What does the term “Israel” mean in Hosea?

In Hosea, “Israel” is used only to refer to the northern kingdom of Israel. It is not used to refer to the southern kingdom or to the two kingdoms together. (See: [kingdom of Israel](#))

Hosea 1

Hosea 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 1:2-11.

Special concepts in this chapter

Hosea's marriage

God does not approve of prostitution, but he told Hosea to marry a prostitute so that the message of Israel's unfaithfulness would be shown to the people. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#))

Hosea's marriage to Gomer is a metaphor for the kingdom of Israel's relationship to Yahweh. Israel was unfaithful to Yahweh and broke the covenant with him. Gomer was a woman who was unfaithful to her husband broke her marriage agreement with him. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [covenant](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Hosea 1-4 is controlled by a metaphor that Hosea lived out. He was personifying the relationship between Israel and Yahweh. Hosea played the part of Yahweh, and Gomer played the part of Israel.

Hosea 1:1

the word of Yahweh that came

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “the word that Yahweh God spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))

Beeri

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Uzziah ... Jotham ... Ahaz ... Hezekiah ... Jeroboam ... Joash

The events in this book happened during the time of these kings. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [son of](#)
- [son of \(2\)](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [kings of](#)
- [king of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹ This is the word of [Yahweh](#) that came to Hosea [son of Beeri](#) in the days of Uzziah, [Jotham](#), [Ahaz](#) and Hezekiah, [kings of Judah](#), and in the days of [Jeroboam son of Joash](#), [king of Israel](#).

UST

¹ Yahweh gave Hosea these messages during the years that Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah were kings of Judah, and when Jeroboam son of Jehoash was king of Israel.

Hosea 1:2

great prostitution

Here “prostitution” represents the people being unfaithful to God.
(See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Go](#)
- [the land](#)
- [flagrant](#)
- [is committing...harlotry](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whored](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whored](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

² When [Yahweh](#) spoke at first through Hosea, [Yahweh](#) said to Hosea, “[Go](#), take for yourself a wife of harlotry and have children of harlotry. For [the land is committing flagrant harlotry](#) by forsaking [Yahweh](#).”

UST

² When Yahweh spoke for the first time through the prophet Hosea, he said, “Go and marry a prostitute. She will have children because she has given herself to other men. When you marry a prostitute, this will show how my people have been so shamefully unfaithful to me. It will show them how they have left me, their God.”

Hosea 1:3

Gomer ... Diblaim

These are names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

³ So he went and took Gomer daughter of Diblaim, and she conceived and bore him [a son](#).

UST

³ So Hosea married Gomer, daughter of Diblaim. She became pregnant and gave birth to a son.

Hosea 1:4

the house of Jehu

Here “house” means “family,” including Jehu’s descendants. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Israel

This expression refers to kingdom of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Call](#)
- [his name](#)
- [I will avenge](#)
- [the blood of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [blood](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁴ [Yahweh](#) said to him, “[Call his name](#) Jezreel. For yet a little while [I will avenge the blood of](#) Jezreel upon [the house of Jehu](#), and I will put an end to the kingdom of [the house of Israel](#).”

UST

⁴ Yahweh said to Hosea, “Give your baby the name Jezreel, because I will soon punish the family members of King Jehu for the murders that he committed in the city of Jezreel. I will also bring the kingdom of Israel to an end.”

Hosea 1:5

the bow of Israel

Here “bow” refers to the power of the army. Alternate translation: “the military power of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

ULT

⁵ It will happen on that day that I break the bow of [Israel](#) in the Valley of Jezreel.”

UST

⁵ On that day I will destroy the fighting strength of the army of Israel, there in the Valley of Jezreel.”

Hosea 1:6

Lo-Ruhamah

This name means “no mercy.” The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. Alternate translation: “No Mercy” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Call
- her name
- the house of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Israel, Israelites
- name
- house, household

ULT

⁶ She conceived again and bore a daughter. Then Yahweh said to Hosea, “Call her name Lo-Ruhamah, for I will no longer have mercy on the house of Israel, that I should forgive them at all.

UST

⁶ Gomer soon became pregnant again, and this time she gave birth to a daughter. Then Yahweh spoke to him, “Give her the name Lo-Ruhamah, which means ‘no mercy,’ because I will no longer have any mercy for the people of Israel, and I will not forgive them for even one sin they have committed.

Hosea 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- But...the house of
- Judah
- and I will save them
- I will...save them
- by Yahweh
- their God
- horses

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house, household

ULT

⁷ But I will have mercy on the house of Judah, and I will save them by Yahweh their God. I will not save them by bow, sword, battle, horses, or horsemen.”

UST

⁷ But I will have mercy on the people of Judah. I will save them—but not by deadly weapons, the bow, the sword, or battle. I will not save them by armies or by strong horses and those who ride on them. Instead, I, Yahweh myself, will save them.”

Hosea 1:8

Lo-Ruhamah

This name means “no mercy.” The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. See how you translated this in [Hosea 1:6](#). Alternate translation: “No Mercy” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

⁸ After she had weaned Lo-Ruhamah, she conceived and bore [a son](#).

UST

⁸ After Gomer had weaned Lo-Ruhamah, she became pregnant again and gave birth to a son.

Hosea 1:9

Lo-Ammi

This name means “not my people.” The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. Alternate translation: “Not My People” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Call
- his name
- are...my people

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- name
- people, people group

ULT

⁹ Then Yahweh said, “[Call his name](#) Lo-Ammi, for you are not [my people](#), and I am not your God.

UST

⁹ Yahweh said “Give him the name Lo-Ammi, which means ‘not my people,’ because you, O Israel, are not my people—and I will no longer protect you as your God.

Hosea 1:10

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.

like the sand of the seashore

This emphasizes the great number of Israelites. (See: [Simile](#))

which cannot be measured or counted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “which no one can measure or count” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

It will be that where it was said to them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Where God said to them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

where it was said to them

This expression probably refers to Jezreel, the city where crimes had been committed by kings of Israel, and which was a symbol of God’s punishment of them.

it will be said to them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God will say to them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [You are sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [are...my people](#)
- [living](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Yet the number of [the sons of Israel](#) will be like the sand of the seashore, which cannot be measured or counted. In the place where it was said to them, ‘You are not [my people](#),’ it will be said to them, ‘[You are sons of the living God](#).’

UST

¹⁰ One day in the future, the people of Israel will be as numerous as the grains of sand by the sea. No one will be able to count them. I have said to Israel, ‘You are not my people,’—but one day I will say to them, ‘You are the people whom I will protect and love.’

Hosea 1:11

will be gathered together

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will gather them together" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

go up from the land

This expression might refer to the land where the people of Israel were in captivity.

the day of Jezreel

This refers to the time when God will put his people back in the land of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The people of](#)
- [and the people of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [They will appoint](#)
- [leader](#)
- [the land](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

11 [The people of Judah and the people of Israel](#) will be gathered together. [They will appoint](#) one [leader](#) for themselves, and they will go up from [the land](#), for great will be the day of Jezreel.

UST

11 On that day I, Yahweh, will gather all the people of Judah and bring them together with all the people of Israel. They will choose from among themselves a single leader, and they will go out of that land in which they were held as exiles. On that day they will say, 'Great is the day of Jezreel!' (Jezreel means, 'God plants his people in his land.')

Hosea 2

Hosea 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULT and many other English translations set the lines of this chapter, which is poetry, farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. Hosea 1-2 is a single series forming one narrative.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Many relationships are used in this chapter that are metaphors for the relationship between Israel and her God. Brother, sister, husband, wife, mother, and children are examples. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

This chapter creates an abrupt change of address. The prophet is now addressing the children directly in the first few verses, but the whole chapter is written against Gomer as an illustration of Israel as an adulterous people. God uses Gomer as an illustration to teach the people of Israel how they should be faithful to him. (See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#))

Hosea 2:1

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.

My people!

This exclamation may be presented as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are my people!" (See: [Exclamations](#))

You have been shown compassion

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has shown you compassion" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

compassion

Alternate translation: "kindness" or "mercy"

Translation Words - ULT

- [to your brothers](#)
- [My people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹ Say [to your brothers](#), '[My people!](#)' and to your sisters, 'You have been shown compassion.'"

UST

¹ Call your male fellow Israelites, 'You are Yahweh's people,' and call your female fellow Israelites, 'Yahweh has been kind to you.'"

Hosea 2:2

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.

lawsuit

This is a complaint by one person against another person in a court of law.

your mother

Here “mother” refers to the nation of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

for she is not my wife

Yahweh is stating that Israel, spoken of here as a woman, is no longer acting like a wife to Yahweh. Instead Israel has turned away from following and worshiping him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

neither am I her husband

Yahweh can no longer be in relationship with the nation of Israel as a husband would be to his wife. (See: [Metaphor](#))

her acts of adultery

A wife who is adulterous leaves her husband to sleep with another man. This is how Israel was acting toward Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

from between her breasts

This imagery suggests that Israel is relying on the idols and not Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

² Contend with your mother, contend, for she is not my wife, and neither am I her husband. Let her put away her harlotry from her face, and her adultery from between her breasts.

UST

² Yahweh said to me, “I want you to accuse Israel, who is like a mother to you, of being like an unfaithful wife to me. This nation is no longer like a wife to me, and I am no longer like a husband to her. Tell Israel that they must stop acting like a prostitute; she must stop worshiping idols. Israel must stop worshiping idols. She must stop acting like a woman who leaves her husband and goes to other men.

Hosea 2:3

I will strip her naked and show her nakedness as on the day that she was born

Yahweh will no longer protect and provide for Israel because the nation has turned away from him. In Israel, husbands were obliged by law to provide clothes for their wives. Not to do so was a sign that a man was rejecting his wife. The full meaning of this may be made clear. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I will make her like the wilderness

Yahweh will change Israel to resemble the wilderness, which is a region that is bare and unproductive. (See: [Simile](#))

I will make her die from thirst

Here “thirst” refers to the need to worship and rely on Yahweh, not idols, or Israel will not be able to survive as a nation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will make her](#)
- [parched](#)
- [and I will make her die](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [barren, dry](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

ULT

³ If not, I will strip her naked and expose her as on the day that she was born. [I will make her](#) like the wilderness, and make her like a [parched](#) land, [and I will make her die](#) from thirst.

UST

³ If she does not stop, I will take her clothes off her and make her naked like she was when she was born. I will make her like the barren wilderness—dry and lifeless; I will make her like a woman dying from thirst in the desert.

Hosea 2:4

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.

for they are children of prostitution

The Israelites are acting like they do not belong to Yahweh. Just as their parents did not worship God, Neither do they. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [on her children](#)
- [are children of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

⁴ I will have no mercy [on her children](#), because they [are children of](#) harlotry.

UST

⁴ I will have no pity on her people, the people of Israel, because their nation is like a prostitute.

Hosea 2:5

For their mother has been a prostitute

The previous generation who sought out other gods were considered prostitutes for they were unfaithful to Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will go after my lovers, for they give me my bread and water, my wool and flax, my oil and drink

Here “my lovers” refers to Baal and other false gods, whom Israel has chosen to worship instead of Yahweh. The list of things are essential items that allow the people to live. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [has played the harlot](#)
- [I will go](#)
- [my lovers](#)
- [my bread](#)
- [my oil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [bread](#)
- [olive](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whored](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

⁵ For their mother [has played the harlot](#), and she who conceived them has acted shamefully. For she said, “I will go after [my lovers](#), who give me [my bread](#) and my water, my wool and my flax, [my oil](#) and my drink.”

UST

⁵ Israel is like a prostitute; she is like a woman who has had these children from doing shameful things with other men. Israel decided to hurry after these idols whom she loved, to worship other gods. She thought that it was those gods who gave her bread and water. She thought that it was those gods who gave her wool, linen, and olive oil, and also wine to drink.

Hosea 2:6

General Information:

Yahweh is talking to Hosea.

Therefore I will build up a hedge to block her way with thorns. I will build up a wall against her so she cannot find her way

This passage indicates that Yahweh will prevent his people from finding success and prosperity, because they continue to worship idols. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))

ULT

⁶ Therefore, I will hedge up her way with thorns. I will build up a wall against her so she cannot find her paths.

UST

⁶ So I will block Israel's road with thornbushes, and I will build a wall around her, so that she cannot find the path to take.

Hosea 2:7

Then she will say, “I will return to my first husband, for it was better for me then than it is now.”

Israel will return to Yahweh not because of their love for him, but because they are disappointed by their worship of Baal. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [her lovers](#)
- [She will seek them](#)
- [I will go](#)
- [and return](#)
- [it was better](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [love, beloved](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

⁷ She will pursue [her lovers](#), but she will not overtake them. [She will seek them](#), but she will not find them. Then she will say, “[I will go and return](#) to my first husband, for [it was better](#) for me then than it is now.”

UST

⁷ Israel will run after her idols but she will not find them. She will search for her false gods, but she will not find them. Then, like a prostitute who wants to return to her husband, she will say to me, ‘I will go back to you, the one I loved at first, because my life was better with you than it is now.’

Hosea 2:8

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.

Translation Words - ULT

- had...known
- it was I
- the grain
- the new wine
- and the oil
- and...silver
- and gold

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- gold, golden
- grain, grainfields
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- oil
- silver
- wine, wineskin, new wine

ULT

⁸ For she had not known that it was I who gave her the grain, the new wine and the oil, and who lavished on her silver and gold, which they then used for Baal.

UST

⁸ The people will say this, because they did not know that it was I, Yahweh, who had given them their grain, new wine, and olive oil. It was I who had given them much silver and gold so they would become wealthy. But then they made all that gold and silver into objects to use in worshiping the idol Baal.

Hosea 2:9

I will take back my wool and flax that were used to cover her nakedness

This probably means that Israel's harvests and flocks will fail. Yahweh will remove his blessings from Israel, and the people will be left alone and in danger of attack. (See: [Metonymy](#))

were used to cover her nakedness

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that the people used to clothe themselves" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I will...back
- my grain
- I will take away

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- grain, grainfields

ULT

⁹ Therefore I will take back my grain in its time, and my new wine in its season. I will take away my wool and my flax that were used to cover her nakedness.

UST

⁹ Therefore I will take away from Israel all the grain I gave them. When the wheat is ready for harvest, I will keep them from getting it. The new wine that I gave them, I will take it away. I will take away from them all the wool and linen I gave them to make clothes for themselves, the clothes that covered their nakedness.

Hosea 2:10

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea.

Then I will strip her naked in the sight of her lovers

This means God will humiliate the people of Israel in front of the other nations nearby. See how you translated this in [Hosea 2:3](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

no one will rescue her out of my hand

No one will try to help Israel. Here “hand” refers to God’s power to punish. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will uncover](#)
- [her lovers](#)
- [out of my hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [exile, exiled](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Now [I will uncover](#) her lewdness in the sight of [her lovers](#), and no one will rescue her [out of my hand](#).

UST

¹⁰ I will treat Israel as a man treats his wife when he finds her with other men. I will strip her naked in front of her lovers. No one will be able rescue her from what I will do to her.

Hosea 2:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- her feasts
- her appointed festivals
- her Sabbaths

Translation Words - UST

- Sabbath
- feast, feasting
- feast, feasting

ULT

¹¹ I will also put an end to all her mirth, her feasts, her new moon celebrations, her Sabbaths, and all her appointed festivals.

UST

¹¹ I will make the people in Israel stop holding their celebrations; they will stop holding their festivals every year. They will no longer celebrate the beginning of every month. They will no longer celebrate the Sabbath days. They will no longer be able to hold the festivals scheduled throughout the year.

Hosea 2:12

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do to Israel.

These are the wages that my lovers gave me

This refers to payment that Israel received from the false gods or Baals. This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "that these were the wages that her lovers had given to her" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

make them a forest

Yahweh will destroy the vineyards and fruit trees by allowing other trees and weeds to grow among them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [her vines](#)
- [and her fig trees](#)
- [my lovers](#)
- [I will make them](#)
- [and...will devour them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [love, beloved](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fig](#)
- [vine](#)

ULT

¹² "I will destroy [her vines and her fig trees](#), of which she has said, 'These are my wages that [my lovers](#) gave me.' I will [make them](#) a forest, and the animals of the field [will devour them](#)."

UST

¹² I will destroy all of Israel's grapevines and fig trees. This is because Israel is like a woman who says, 'These were the things that my lovers gave me in payment.' I, Yahweh, will turn those places into a forest, a thicket in which no vines can grow, and where wild animals will devour any fruit that grows there.'

Hosea 2:13

this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will punish](#)
- [her lovers](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [love, beloved](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹³ [I will punish](#) her for the feast days of the Baals, when she burned incense to them, when she adorned herself with her rings and jewelry, and she went after [her lovers](#) and forgot me— this is the declaration of [Yahweh](#)."

UST

¹³ I will punish this woman named Israel for all the times that she burned incense to worship the Baal idols. She decorated herself with rings and jewelry, as a prostitute would adorn herself for her lovers. She used to follow her lovers—like Israel has gone after the Baals—those false gods that she worshiped. And she forgot about me." This is what Yahweh says.

Hosea 2:14

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh is speaking about Israel.

So I am going to win her back

Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, will bring her back to me"

Translation Words - ULT

- I
- tenderly to her

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- pray, prayer

ULT

14 Therefore, behold, I am going to allure her. I will bring her into the wilderness and speak tenderly to her.

UST

14 "I will lead her into the wilderness and tell her that I love her. I will persuade her to love me again.

Hosea 2:15

the Valley of Achor as a door of hope

As Yahweh lead Israel out of Egypt, he will lead Israel to the Valley of Achor so that Israel will hope again in Yahweh.

She will answer me there as she did in the days of her youth, as in the days that she came out of the land of Egypt

Yahweh hopes that the nation of Israel will repent and again choose to worship him as their God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

She will answer

Some modern versions understand the Hebrew word to mean “She will sing.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [her vineyards](#)
- [hope](#)
- [Egypt](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hope, hoped](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [vineyard](#)

ULT

¹⁵ I will give her back [her vineyards](#), and the Valley of Achor as a door of [hope](#). She will answer me there as in the days of her youth, as in the days that she came out of the land of [Egypt](#).

UST

¹⁵ I will give her vineyards back to her once more, and in the Valley of Achor I will cause her to hope once more. She will answer me with love and delight, as it was back in the first days when we first loved each other— when I set her free, and she came up out of Egypt.

Hosea 2:16

My husband

This means the people of Israel will love and be faithful to Yahweh just as a wife is to a husband. (See: [Metaphor](#))

My Baal

“Baal” means “master” and also refers to the false god that the Canaanites worship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [that you will call me](#)
- [me](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 “It will be in that day—this is the declaration of [Yahweh](#)— [that you will call me](#), ‘My husband,’ and you will no longer call [me](#), ‘My Baal.’

UST

16 At that time, Israel will call me, ‘My Husband,’ as a woman would say to her human husband. She will no longer call out to a god, ‘My Baal,’ but she will call out to me as ‘My Husband.’

Hosea 2:17

For I will remove the names of the Baals from her mouth

The Israelites will not speak the names of Baal and the idols again. The people are represented by their mouths. Alternate translation: “For I will cause you to not speak the names of the Baals” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the names of](#)
- [by their names](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

¹⁷ For I will remove [the names of](#) the Baals from her mouth; and they will be remembered [by their names](#) no more.”

UST

¹⁷ I will not allow Israel to speak the names of the images of Baal that she used to worship. My people will forget the names of those Baals and their idols, and my people Israel will never worship them again.

Hosea 2:18

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do to Israel.

On that day

This phrase is used to talk about a future restoration between Israel and Yahweh.

I will make a covenant for them

Yahweh's new covenant will include peace for the animals.

I will drive away the bow, the sword, and the battle from the land, and I will make you lie down in safety

Yahweh will keep Israel's enemies away from them, there will be no more war, the people will be safe. Here "the bow, the sword, and the battle" represent war. (See: [Metonymy](#))

lie down in safety

This expression refers to living in safety. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I will make
- a covenant
- in the sky
- the bow
- the sword
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- bow and arrow, a bow
- cut off, cut down
- earth, land
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

18 "On that day I will make a covenant for them with the beasts in the fields, with the birds in the sky, and with the crawling things on the ground. I will abolish the bow, the sword, and war from the land, and I will make you lie down in safety.

UST

18 At that time I will make a covenant for them: it will be with all the wild animals and birds, and even with the little animals that crawl along the ground. They will never harm my people again. I will promise to remove all the weapons that are used for fighting battles, the bows and arrows, and the swords, and every war, I will take them all away and destroy all of them. And I will let all of my people rest in peace; they will be not be afraid anymore.

Hosea 2:19

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do for Israel.

I will promise to be your husband forever

Yahweh will be like the husband, and Israel will be like Yahweh's wife.
(See: [Metaphor](#))

in righteousness, justice, covenant faithfulness, and mercy

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns. Alternate translation: "and do what is right, just, faithful, and merciful" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in justice](#)
- [and in mercy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [judge, judgment](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)

ULT

19 I will betroth you to me forever. I will betroth you to me in righteousness, [in justice](#), in steadfast love, [and in mercy](#).

UST

19 You will be like my wife forever, Israel. I will promise myself to you, by doing what is right, and by loving what is just. I promise to love you and to show you kindness even when you do not deserve it.

Hosea 2:20

you will know Yahweh

Here “know” means to acknowledge Yahweh as their God and to be faithful to him.

Translation Words - ULT

- and you will know
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²⁰ I will betroth you to me in faithfulness, and you will know Yahweh.

UST

²⁰ I will keep my promise to you, Israel. I will never lie to you; and you will come to know me—my name is Yahweh.

Hosea 2:21

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do for Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- I will answer
- I will answer
- will answer
- Yahweh
- the heavens
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- Yahweh
- earth, land

ULT

²¹ On that day, I will answer—this is the declaration of Yahweh— I will answer the heavens, and they will answer the earth.

UST

²¹ At that time, I will help you,” says Yahweh. “I will give a command to the sky, and the sky will pour out rain onto the ground.

Hosea 2:22

The earth will answer the grain, the new wine and the oil, and they will answer Jezreel

The land will meet the need for grain, new wine, and olive oil. These things will also meet the needs of Jezreel. The land and these products are spoken of as if they were people who could meet the needs of others. (See: [Personification](#))

Jezreel

Here the name of this valley stands for all the people of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [will answer](#)
- [will answer](#)
- [the grain](#)
- [the new wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

ULT

²² The earth [will answer the grain, the new wine](#) and the oil, and they [will answer](#) Jezreel.

UST

²² And the ground will provide grain, new wine and olive trees, and they will grow for the people of Israel.

Hosea 2:23

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Hosea about what he will do for Israel.

I will plant her for myself in the land

When God makes his people safe and prosperous in their land again, they are spoken of if they were agricultural crops. Alternate translation: "I will take care of the Israelite people as a farmer plants his crops and takes care of them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Lo-Ruhamah

This name means "no mercy." The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. See how you translated this in [Hosea 1:6](#). Alternate translation: "No Mercy" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Lo-Ammi

This name means "not my people." The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. See how you translated this in [Hosea 1:9](#). Alternate translation: "Not My People" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ammi Attah

This name means "you are my people." The translator may choose to represent this meaning as the name. Alternate translation: "You Are My People" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Lo-Ammi](#)
- [are my people](#)
- [You are my God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

²³ I will sow her for myself in the land, and I will have mercy on Lo-Ruhamah. I will say [to Lo-Ammi](#), 'You [are my people](#),' and they will say, 'You [are my God](#).'"

UST

²³ At that time, I will take care of the Israelite people as a farmer plants his own land and takes care of his crops. I will show my love to those people whom I called 'Not my People'. And those whom I called 'Not my People', I will now call by a new name: 'You are my People'. They will say to me, 'You are our God.'"

Hosea 3

Hosea 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter focuses on the meaning of the illustration of Hosea's marriage. It is a very short chapter written in prose to show the truth of Israel's relationship with Yahweh. After bearing a number of children for Hosea, Gomer leaves him and prostitutes herself with other men, showing little to no regard for their marriage covenant. (See: [covenant](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

This chapter contains a continuation of the metaphor played out in chapter 2. Hosea is told to go and buy his wife out of slavery. Gomer must have been captured and held as a slave due to her adulterous activity. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#))

Hosea 3:1

Go again, love a woman, loved by her husband, but who is an adulteress

This refers back to [Hosea 1:2](#). Yahweh again tells Hosea to love an adulterous woman.

Love her just as I, Yahweh, love the people of Israel

By loving the adulterous woman, Hosea will be an example of Yahweh's love for Israel. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

they turn to other gods and love raisin cakes

People ate raisin or fig cakes during festivals where they worshiped false gods.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Go
- love
- who is loved by
- and love
- the sons of
- Israel
- gods
- raisin

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- love, beloved
- love, beloved
- love, beloved
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- grape, grapevine
- walk, walked

ULT

¹ Yahweh said to me, "Go again, love a woman who is loved by another man and is an adulteress, even as Yahweh loves the sons of Israel, although they turn to other gods and love raisin cakes."

UST

¹ Then Yahweh said to me, "Go and love a woman, even though she is loved by another man, and she is also unfaithful to her husband. You will be like me, because I love the people of Israel, even though they worship other gods and eat raisin cakes in their honor."

Hosea 3:2**fifteen pieces of silver and a homer and a lethek of barley**

This was the price to buy a slave.

fifteen pieces

“15 pieces” (See: [Numbers](#))

a homer and a lethek of barley

This can be stated in modern units. Alternate translation: “330 liters of barley” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pieces of silver](#)
- [barley](#)
- [barley](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [barley](#)
- [barley](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

² So I bought her for myself for fifteen [pieces of silver](#) and a homer and a lethek of [barley](#).

UST

² Even though she was a slave, owned by another person, I bought her for 170 grams of silver, and 330 liters of barley grain.

Hosea 3:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- You will...play the harlot

Translation Words - UST

- prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT

³ I said to her, "You must dwell with me many days. **You will** not **play the harlot** or belong to any other man. In the same way, I will be with you."

UST

³ Then I said to her, "You will live with me from now on. You will no longer be a prostitute who sleeps with various men. You will not belong to any other man, only to me, and I will be faithful to you and live with you for the rest of my life."

Hosea 3:4

For the people of Israel will live for many days without a king, prince, sacrifice, stone pillar, ephod or household idols

Just as Hosea lived without his wife because she committed adultery, Israel will live without a king and without worshiping God, because they committed idolatry.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- a king
- prince
- sacrifice
- ephod

Translation Words - UST

- ephod
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

⁴ For the sons of Israel will dwell for many days without a king, prince, sacrifice, stone pillar, ephod or household idols.

UST

⁴ When I do these things, this is to show that the people of Israel will live for a long time and not have any king ruling over them. They will have no prince, no sacrifices or pillars set up for worship, ephods or idols in their houses.

Hosea 3:5

seek Yahweh their God

Here “seek” means they are asking God to accept them and their worship.

David their king

Here “David” represents all the descendants of David. Alternate translation: “a descendant of David to be their king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in the last days

Alternate translation: “in the future”

they will come trembling before Yahweh and his goodness

Here “trembling” represents feelings of awe and humility. Alternate translation: “they will come back to Yahweh and will humble themselves, honor him, and ask for his blessings” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁵ Afterward [the sons of Israel](#) will return and seek Yahweh their God and David their king, and in the last days, they will come trembling to Yahweh and to his goodness.

UST

⁵ After some time, the people of Israel will return to Yahweh; they will hope that he will receive them back. They will hope to have a descendant of David for their king again. In the later time, they will come to Yahweh to honor him and tremble before him because of his goodness to them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [and seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their God](#)
- [David](#)
- [their king](#)
- [his goodness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Hosea 4

Hosea 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The author stops using the metaphor of a husband/wife relationship and begins using a new illustration using lawsuits. God is suing the people of Israel because of all the wrong they have done. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Lawsuits

Lawsuits are special cases where people go to court when they have a legal issue to resolve between them. Normally, one party is accusing another party of having done wrong.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metonymy

Metonymy is used in the first few verses of this chapter. Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. Bloodshed is associated with murder. Stumbling represents sinning. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Hosea 4:1

General Information:

This chapter begins Yahweh's argument against the unfaithful Israelites.

Yahweh has a lawsuit against the inhabitants of the land

Yahweh stating that the people of Israel have sinned against him and broken his covenant is spoken of as if Yahweh were accusing them in court. (See: [Metaphor](#))

lawsuit

This is a complaint by one person against another person in a court of law. See how you translated this in [Hosea 2:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- O sons of
- Israel
- the land
- faithfulness
- steadfast love
- God

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- earth, land

ULT

¹ Hear the word of Yahweh, O sons of Israel. For Yahweh has a lawsuit against the inhabitants of the land, because there is no faithfulness or steadfast love, no knowledge of God in the land.

UST

¹ Listen to the message Yahweh has for you. "You people of Israel, Yahweh is accusing you, you who live in this place." He says, "I cannot find anyone here who tells the truth. I cannot see anyone who loves me. None of you can honestly say that he knows me.

Hosea 4:2

The people have broken all bounds

Here “bounds” stands for the limits of what the law allows. Alternate translation: “The people have disobeyed the law in every possible way” (See: [Metaphor](#))

bloodshed comes after bloodshed

Here “bloodshed” stands for “murder” which often involves making the victim bleed. Alternate translation: “you commit one murder after another” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

ULT

² There is cursing, lying, murder, stealing and adultery. They have broken all bounds, and bloodshed follows bloodshed.

UST

² You curse and lie, you kill and steal, and you commit adultery. You have broken every law, and you commit one murder after another.

Hosea 4:3

So the land is drying up

This expression refers to drought, when no rain falls for a long time.

wasting away

becoming weak and dying because of sickness or lack of food

are being taken away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "are dying" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [mourns](#)
- [the sky](#)
- [are being taken away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [mourn, mourner, weeping](#)

ULT

³ Therefore [the land mourns](#), and all who live in it are wasting away, along with the beasts in the fields and the birds in [the sky](#), even the fish in the sea, [are being taken away](#).

UST

³ Because of what the people are doing, the land is now a wilderness. Every creature that lives here is dying, from the animals that live in the fields, to the birds that fly in the sky; even the fish in the sea, they are also dying.

Hosea 4:4

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking about Israel.

lawsuit

a complaint by one person against another person in a court of law

do not let anyone accuse anyone else

No one should accuse another person of anything because everyone is guilty of something.

Translation Words - ULT

- For...is with you
- O priests

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- people, people group

ULT

⁴ But let no one bring a lawsuit; and let no one accuse. For my contention is with you, O priests.

UST

⁴ But you must not accuse anyone else for this trouble. You must not allow anyone to correct another person; no one has that right, because everyone is guilty. And I am also accusing the priests.

Hosea 4:5

You priests will stumble

Here “stumble” means to disobey God or even to stop trusting him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will destroy your mother

Here “mother” refers to the nation of Israel. See how you translated this in [Hosea 2:2](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the prophets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

ULT

⁵ You will stumble by day; [the prophets](#) will also stumble with you by night, and I will destroy your mother.

UST

⁵ You priests sin during the day and the prophets with you sin at night. I promise you, I will destroy Israel, who is like a mother to you.

Hosea 4:6

General Information:

In 4:6, Yahweh is talking to the priests about the people of Israel. But in 4:7, he is talking about the priests, not to them. It is possible for the translator to follow the example of the UST, which portrays Yahweh as talking to the priests also in 4:7.

My people are being destroyed because of the lack of knowledge

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "My people are perishing because you, the priests, have not properly taught them about me so that they will obey me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

knowledge

Here "knowledge" refers to the knowledge of God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- My people
- from being priests
- the law of
- your God
- your children

Translation Words - UST

- God
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- priest, priesthood
- son
- people, people group

ULT

⁶ My people are destroyed because of the lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I also reject you from being priests to me. Because you have forgotten the law of your God, I also will forget your children.

UST

⁶ My people are perishing because you priests have refused to understand me. And why do you understand me so little? Because you have rejected the things I have instructed you to do. So I am rejecting you from being priests to me. Look at what you have forgotten: You have forgotten the instructions that I, your God, gave to you. Because you forgot me, I will forget your children.

Hosea 4:7

They exchanged their honor for shame

This could mean: (1) "honor" is a metonym that represents Yahweh, and "shame" is a metonym that represents idols. Alternate translation: "They have stopped worshiping me, their honorable God, and now worship shameful idols" or (2) some Bible versions translate this as "I will exchange their honor for shame." This means Yahweh will take away the things which the priests honor and cause the priests to be ashamed. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they sinned](#)
- [their glory](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

ULT

7 The more they multiplied, the more [they sinned](#) against me. I will change [their glory](#) into shame.

UST

7 The more numerous you priests become, the more you do the things that I have forbidden. You have abandoned me in order to become shameful.

Hosea 4:8

They feed on the sin of my people

When people sinned, they would offer sacrifices so God would forgive them. The priests were allowed to eat these sacrifices. The priests eating these sacrifices for sin is spoken of as if they would actually feed on the people's sins. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

they are greedy for more of their wickedness

The priests want the people to sin more so that the people will offer more sacrifices that the priests may eat. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- They feed on
- the sin of
- my people
- they are greedy
- their iniquity

Translation Words - UST

- iniquity
- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- devour
- people, people group

ULT

⁸ They feed on the sin of my people; they are greedy for their iniquity.

UST

⁸ When other people sin, they bring sacrifices to me, some of which you eat. So you want the people to sin more and more.

Hosea 4:9

It will be the same for the people as for the priests

Alternate translation: "The people and the priests will be punished in the same way"

their practices

Alternate translation: "their habits" or "their conduct"

Translation Words - ULT

- like people
- I will punish
- I will repay

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- restore, restoration
- people, people group

ULT

⁹ It will be like people, like priests: I will punish them for their ways; I will repay them for their deeds.

UST

⁹ I will punish you priests just as I punish the people. I will punish all of you for your behavior; I will pay you all back for all the wicked deeds you have done.

Hosea 4:10

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Israel.

but not increase

Alternate translation: "but not have children"

they have gone far away

The people have stopped worshipping and following God.

from Yahweh

Yahweh is speaking about himself in the third person. This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "from me" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They will eat](#)
- [they will play the harlot](#)
- [they have forsaken](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whored](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [They will eat](#) but not have enough; [they will play the harlot](#) but not increase, because [they have forsaken Yahweh](#) to devote themselves to

UST

¹⁰ You all will eat, but you will never get enough. You will always be hungry. They will continue to sleep with other women, but the women will not conceive, because you have all abandoned me, Yahweh.

Hosea 4:11

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh is talking about Israel.

sexual promiscuity, wine, and new wine, which have taken away their understanding

The people of Israel are pursuing sex outside of marriage and drinking too much wine. In doing these activities they have forgotten Yahweh's commands. These actions are spoken of here as if they were someone who could prevent other people from understanding the importance of obeying Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wine](#)
- [the understanding](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

ULT

¹¹ harlotry, [wine](#), and new wine, which take away [the understanding](#).

UST

¹¹ You love to do forbidden sexual acts, and to drink wine and new wine. All these things have made it impossible for you to know right from wrong.

Hosea 4:12

their walking sticks give them prophecies

Idol worshipers used walking sticks to help them predict the future. The walking sticks are spoken of here as if they were people who spoke prophecies. (See: [Personification](#))

a mind of promiscuity has misled them

Worshiping the idols and sleeping with the temple prostitutes has developed in the people of Israel the desire to always sin against Yahweh in these ways. Here “mind” is spoken of as if it were a separate person who was able to convince the people to disobey Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))

has misled

has convinced the people to sin (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [My people](#)
- [a spirit of](#)
- [their God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹² [My people](#) consult their wooden idols, and their walking sticks inform them. For [a spirit of](#) harlotry has led them astray, and they have played the harlot, departing from [their God](#).

UST

¹² My own people pray to an idol made from a piece of wood. They ask their walking staffs to tell them which way they should go! They are always wanting to sin in sexual ways, so they have stopped obeying me, the God whom they should worship.

Hosea 4:13

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Israel.

on the tops of the mountains ... on the hills

It was common for the people to set up idols in these places, often called “high places” in the Old Testament.

Translation Words - ULT

- They sacrifice
- the tops of
- is good
- play the harlot
- and your daughters-in-law

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- bride, bridal
- head
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

¹³ They sacrifice on the tops of the mountains and burn incense on the hills, under oaks, poplars and terebinths, because the shade is good. Therefore your daughters play the harlot, and your daughters-in-law commit adultery.

UST

¹³ They worship other gods in the places on the tops of the mountains where they have set up idols. They burn offerings to the idols up on those hills—in all the places where they worship those idols—under the oak trees, poplar trees, and the terebinth trees— because these trees give good shade. Following your example, your daughters decided to become prostitutes, and your daughters-in-law committed adultery.

Hosea 4:14

sacred prostitutes

These were women who had sexual relations with men who came to worship certain idols. This was viewed as a sacred action in honor of the false gods.

So this people who does not understand will be thrown down

Yahweh will destroy the nation of Israel because they do not understand or obey God's commandments. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I will...punish
- they play the harlot
- harlots
- they offer sacrifices
- So the people
- understanding

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- people, people group
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- understand, understanding, thinking

ULT

14 I will not **punish** your daughters when **they play the harlot**, nor your daughters-in-law when they commit adultery. For the men themselves go aside with **harlots**, and **they offer sacrifices** with cult prostitutes. **So the people** without **understanding** will be thrown down.

UST

14 But I will not punish the women for turning to prostitution, or your daughters-in-law when they commit adultery. It is the men who are doing the very same thing! The men sleep with prostitutes, and they offer sacrifices in the houses of idols where there are prostitutes. It is true: "A people who have not lived as they were taught to live, will come to destruction."

Hosea 4:15

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Judah and Israel.

may Judah not become guilty

God knows how sinful Israel has become and does not want Judah to do the same thing.

Do not go to Gilgal, you people; do not go up to Beth Aven

The people of Judah are being warned not to go to the cities of Gilgal or Beth Aven to worship idols in those places. Gilgal was once a place where Yahweh had been worshiped, but it had become a place of idol worship.

Beth Aven

This was a city on the border between the northern kingdom of Israel and the tribe of Benjamin in the southern kingdom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- O Israel
- play the harlot
- Judah
- do...swear, saying
- Yahweh
- As...lives

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Judea, Judah
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT

¹⁵ Though you, O Israel, play the harlot, let not Judah become guilty. Do not go to Gilgal, do not go up to Beth Aven, and do not swear, saying, "As Yahweh lives."

UST

¹⁵ Israel, you have left me and gone to idols. But I hope that Judah will not do the same thing. You people of Judah, do not go to Gilgal. Do not go up to Beth Aven to worship idols there. Do not make solemn oaths, calling on me to make good on your promises, adding to your vows the words, 'As Yahweh lives!'

Hosea 4:16

like a stubborn heifer

Israel is compared to a young cow that will not obey its master. (See: [Simile](#))

How can Yahweh bring them to pasture like lambs in a meadow?

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he cannot continue to take care of the people because they are stubborn. Yahweh no longer taking care of his people is spoken of as if he were a shepherd that could not take his lambs into the field to eat because they are stubborn. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will not shepherd a rebellious people." or "Therefore Yahweh will not continue to take care of them." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

How can Yahweh

Here Yahweh is speaking of himself in the third person. It can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "How can I" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 [Israel](#) is stubborn, like a stubborn heifer; can [Yahweh](#) now feed them like lambs in a broad pasture?

UST

16 Israel is as stubborn as a young cow. Can I now feed them as if they were little lambs in a meadow?

Hosea 4:17

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Israel.

Ephraim united himself with idols; leave him alone

Here "Ephraim" represents the whole northern kingdom of Israel, which is a metonym for the people who live there. They chose to worship idols, instead of Yahweh. Yahweh is commanding Hosea to not try to correct them. The people of Israel will not listen. (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁷ Ephraim is joined to idols; leave him alone.

UST

¹⁷ Ephraim has gone to join idols. Leave those people alone!

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ephraim](#), [Ephraimite](#)

Hosea 4:18

her rulers dearly love their shame

The rulers are not ashamed of what they are doing when they worship idols and turn against Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- continually
- they play the harlot
- love
- dearly

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- love, beloved
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT

18 Even when their liquor is gone, they play the harlot continually; her rulers dearly love their shame.

UST

18 When they have finished drinking all their alcoholic drinks then they will commit even more sexual sins. Their rulers love to do these shameful things.

Hosea 4:19

The wind will wrap her up in its wings

Here “wind” represents God’s judgment and anger against the nation of Israel. Yahweh will allow the enemy army to defeat the people of Israel and take them as captives. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The wind](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, wind, breath](#)

ULT

19 [The wind](#) will wrap her up in its wings; and they will be ashamed because of their sacrifices.

UST

19 Someone will attack them; he will be like a whirlwind that lifts them up and carries them away to another place. Only then will they be ashamed because they gave offerings to the idols.”

Hosea 5

Hosea 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues using the poetic form exclusively.

Special concepts in this chapter

The author uses Ephraim and Israel interchangeably. They both refer to the northern kingdom of Israel. Judah is also mentioned and refers to the southern kingdom of Judah. Benjamin is part of the southern kingdom of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

This chapter is full of metaphors and similes. The writer uses these figures of speech to show how Yahweh will treat his people for not obeying his instructions. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#) and [people of God](#))

Hosea 5:1

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh is talking about Israel.

You have been a snare at Mizpah and a net spread over Tabor

A snare and a net are both objects used to catch prey. In this case, the priests and the royal household had devised ways to keep the people away from Yahweh, while enticing them into idolatry. Mizpah and Tabor were places for idol worship in the land of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [O priests](#)
- [O house of](#)
- [O house of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)

ULT

¹ "Hear this, [O priests](#)! Pay attention, [O house of Israel](#)! Listen, [O house of the king](#)! For [the judgment](#) is for you, for you have been a snare at Mizpah and a net spread over Tabor.

UST

¹ "Listen, you priests! Pay attention, you people of Israel! And you members of the king's family, you also need to listen! For I will punish all of you. The things you have done have been like a trap for the people at Mizpah. The things you have done have become like a net spread out to catch the people who live on Mount Tabor.

Hosea 5:2

The rebels stand deep in slaughter

Here “rebels” refers to all of those people who had turned away from Yahweh, and “deep in slaughter” could refer to the murder of innocent people, or to the slaughter of animals offered to pagan idols. (See: [Metaphor](#))

The rebels

The translator can represent this as “You rebels,” because God is really talking to the rebellious people of Israel.

in slaughter

Some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression as standing for wickedness.

I will punish all of them

The translator can represent this as “I will punish all of you.”

ULT

² The rebels stand deep in slaughter, but I will discipline all of them. ^[1]

UST

² Those who rebelled against me have now killed so many that they are standing deep in their blood. I tell you that I will punish them all.

Hosea 5:3

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Israel.

I know Ephraim, and Israel is not hidden from me

Here, “Ephraim” and “Israel” both refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel, and represent the people who live there. Here God says that he knows what they are like and what they are doing. (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Ephraim, now you have become like a prostitute

Ephraim is presented in terms of a prostitute because the people have become unfaithful to God, as a prostitute is faithful to no man. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [O Ephraim \(2\)](#)
- [you have played the harlot](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite \(2\)](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whored](#)

ULT

³ I [know Ephraim](#), and Israel is not hidden from me; for now, [O Ephraim](#), [you have played the harlot](#); Israel is defiled.

UST

³ You, the people in Ephraim, the center of Israel—I know you. I know very well what you are like, you people of Israel. You people in Ephraim, you have acted like prostitutes. Yes, you people in Israel are polluted.

Hosea 5:4

for the mind of adultery is in them

This means they have the desire to be unfaithful to God. They want to worship idols.

to turn to God ... they do not know Yahweh

The translator can represent this as "to turn to me ... they do not know me," or "to turn to me ... they do not know me, Yahweh."

they do not know Yahweh

Israel no longer obeys Yahweh in any way. They do not acknowledge Yahweh as their God.

Translation Words - ULT

- to return
- their God
- a spirit of
- they do...know
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- God
- restore, restoration
- spirit, wind, breath
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁴ Their deeds will not allow them to return to their God, for a spirit of harlotry is within them, and they do not know Yahweh.

UST

⁴ Ephraim and Israel are not able to ask me to forgive them, because of what they have done. They have chosen to be unfaithful and immoral, and they do not know me, Yahweh."

Hosea 5:5

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Israel.

The pride of Israel testifies against him

This describes “pride” as a person who testifies against the people of Israel in court. Their prideful attitude and behavior show that they are guilty of no longer obeying Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))

so Israel and Ephraim will stumble in their guilt; and Judah also will stumble with them

The two kingdoms will become completely disobedient to God because of their pride and sin. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

⁵ The pride of [Israel](#) testifies against him; Israel and Ephraim will stumble in their guilt; [Judah](#) also will stumble with them.

UST

⁵ Israel is proud; because of this others know how guilty she is. The sins that the people of Israel have committed are making them faithless to Yahweh. Judah is becoming faithless, too.

Hosea 5:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- They will go
- to seek
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- seek, search, look for
- walk, walked

ULT

⁶ They will go with their flocks and herds to seek Yahweh, but they will not find him, for he has withdrawn from them.

UST

⁶ They are hoping to persuade Yahweh to have mercy on them. They are coming to sacrifice sheep and cattle to him from their flocks and herds. But they will find that Yahweh will have no mercy on them because he has stopped helping them; he is leaving them alone.

Hosea 5:7

They were unfaithful to Yahweh, for they have borne illegitimate children

This could mean: (1) this means the Israelites were marrying people from other nations and having children with them or (2) this means the Israelite parents were unfaithful to Yahweh and they were teaching their children to worship idols.

Now the new moon festivals will devour them with their fields

The people of Israel were supposed to celebrate during the new moon. Here this expression seems to describe the new moon festival as a beast that will eat the people and their fields. However, it is hard to interpret this expression; many versions translate it without making much sense of it. However, the overall meaning is certainly that God will punish the people for their unfaithfulness to him. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [children](#)
- [will devour them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

⁷ They were unfaithful [to Yahweh](#), for they have borne illegitimate [children](#). Now the new moon [will devour them](#) with their fields.

UST

⁷ They did not keep their promises to Yahweh. and they have had children by foreign women. So at the time of the new moon festivals, they will perish, together with their cultivated fields."

Hosea 5:8

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Israel.

Blow the horn in Gibeah, and the trumpet in Ramah

Here “horn” and “trumpet” mean the same thing. This command is given to the people of Gibeah and Ramah to emphasize that the enemy is coming. (See: [Doublet](#))

Sound a battle cry at Beth Aven: ‘We will follow you, Benjamin!’

Here “Benjamin” represents the soldiers from the tribe of Benjamin. This may be a request for them to lead the people into battle. But modern versions make various attempts to interpret this expression. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Beth Aven

This was a city on the border between the northern kingdom of Israel and the tribe of Benjamin in the southern kingdom. See how you translated this in [Hosea 4:15](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the horn](#)
- [O Benjamin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)

ULT

⁸ Blow [the horn](#) in Gibeah, and the trumpet in Ramah. Sound the alarm at Beth Aven: ‘We will follow you, [O Benjamin!](#)’

UST

⁸ Yahweh says, “Blow the ram horns at the city of Gibeah! Blow the trumpets at the city of Ramah! Shout a battle cry at the city of Beth Aven! Lead us into battle, you people of the tribe of Benjamin!”

Hosea 5:9

Among the tribes of Israel I have declared what is certain to happen

Alternate translation: "I will do to the tribes of Israel what I have declared"

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- Israel
- I declare
- what is certain

Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy
- Israel, Israelites
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁹ Ephraim will become a desolation in the day of punishment. Among the tribes of Israel I declare what is certain.

UST

⁹ I will punish the people of Ephraim and turn their city into a pile of rubble. This is my promise to the tribes of Israel —I pledge to you all that I will do this.

Hosea 5:10

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Judah and Israel.

The leaders of Judah are like those who move a boundary stone

To “move a boundary stone” refers to moving the landmark that marked the border of some property, which was a crime under Israelite law. (See: [Simile](#))

I will pour my wrath on them like water

Yahweh’s wrath against Judah will be like a large stream of water that destroys them. In the scriptures, emotions and moral qualities are often spoken of as if they were liquids. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The princes of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [The princes of Judah](#) are like those who move a boundary. I will pour out my wrath on them like water.

UST

¹⁰ The leaders of Judah are as bad as people who steal farmland by moving boundary markers; they steal land that does not belong to them. I will punish them in a way that will make them perish.

Hosea 5:11

Ephraim is crushed; he is crushed in judgment

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This statement is made twice for emphasis. Here “Ephraim” refers to the people of the northern kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “I will punish the people of Israel severely” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

walked after idols

Here “walked” represents the idea of worshiping. (See: [Metaphor](#))

idols

The Hebrew word translated here as “idols” is uncertain in its meaning, and is translated by modern versions in many different ways.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)
- [in judgment](#)
- [to go](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

11 [Ephraim](#) is oppressed; he is crushed [in judgment](#), because he was determined [to go](#) after idols.

UST

11 Ephraim will suffer greatly; the people will perish when I punish them, because they were determined to worship idols.

Hosea 5:12

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Judah and Israel.

I will be like a moth to Ephraim, and like rot to the house of Judah

A moth on a piece of wool and rot in a piece of wood are both destructive. Yahweh will destroy both nations. (See: [Simile](#))

moth ... rot

These two terms are translated in various ways because the meaning of the Hebrew word is either very broad or it is uncertain.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the house of](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹² So I will be like a moth to Ephraim, and like rot [to the house of Judah](#).

UST

¹² I will destroy Ephraim as a moth destroys wool; I will destroy Judah as rot destroys wood.

Hosea 5:13

When Ephraim saw his sickness, and Judah saw his wound

Both Ephraim (the northern kingdom of Israel) and Judah (the southern kingdom of Israel) realized that they were in danger. (See: [Metaphor](#))

then Ephraim went to Assyria, and Judah sent messengers to the great king

Ephraim and Judah asked Assyria for help instead of asking Yahweh for help. "Great king" was a title for the king of Assyria.

But he was not able

Here "he" refers to the king of Assyria.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [and Judah](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [the...king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹³ When [Ephraim](#) saw his sickness, and [Judah](#) his wound, then [Ephraim](#) went to [Assyria](#), and sent to the great [king](#). But he is not able to cure you or heal your wound.

UST

¹³ When the people of Ephraim realized how weak they were, then they asked the people of Assyria for help. When the people of Judah realized how weak they were, they sent messengers to the great king of Assyria. But he could not help you people; he could not make you people strong again.

Hosea 5:14

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Judah and Israel.

So I will be like a lion to Ephraim

Yahweh is going to pursue and attack Ephraim like a lion. (See: [Simile](#))

like a young lion to the house of Judah

Yahweh is going to treat Judah in a similar way. Yahweh is showing his displeasure with both the northern and the southern kingdoms. (See: [Simile](#))

I, even I

Yahweh is emphasizing that he is the one that is bringing judgment on all of his people.

will tear

As a lion tears apart the animal it is eating, so Yahweh will tear his people away from their homes and country. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I
- to the house of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- Judea, Judah
- house, household

ULT

¹⁴ For I will be like a lion to Ephraim, and like a young lion to the house of Judah. I, even I, will tear and go away; I will carry off, and there will be no one to rescue.

UST

¹⁴ I will become like a lion to the people of Ephraim in Israel; I will become like a young lion to the people of Judah. I will destroy them and leave them; I will carry them far away, and no one will be able to rescue them.

Hosea 5:15

I will go and return to my place

Yahweh will leave his rebellious people.

seek my face

Try to come into God's presence by means of worship and sacrifice.
Alternate translation: "ask me to pay attention to them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will go](#)
- [and return](#)
- [and seek](#)
- [my face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

15 [I will go and return](#) to my place, until they acknowledge their guilt [and seek my face](#), until they earnestly seek me in their distress."

5:2 ^[1] , , or, continuing on from the previous verse, .

UST

15 Then I will go back to where I came from; from there I will wait for them to admit that they have sinned; I will wait for them to come and ask me to help them."

Hosea 6

Hosea 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues using the poetic form to show how Yahweh will still show mercy to his wayward people, the northern kingdom of Israel and the southern kingdom of Judah. Gilead is an area in the northern kingdom of Israel where several of the tribes lived. (See: [mercy](#), [merciful](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Change in speaker

There is a change in person from 6:1-3 to 6:4-11. In the first passage, the speaker is an anonymous Israelite, but in the rest of the chapter, the speaker is Yahweh.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Throughout the chapter, the author uses the metaphor of prostitution to say that his people have abandoned him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Hosea 6:1

Connecting Statement:

The people of Israel confess their need to repent.

he has torn us to pieces ... he has injured us

God has punished the people of Israel because they disobeyed him and worshiped idols. (See: [Parallelism](#))

he will heal us ... he will bandage our wounds

Israel believes that God will be merciful to them when they repent and he will deliver them from their troubles. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Come](#)
- [let us return](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

¹ ["Come, let us return](#) to [Yahweh](#). For he has torn us, but he will heal us; he has struck us down, but he will bandage us.

UST

¹ The people say, "Come, let us return to Yahweh. He has torn our flesh to pieces as a lion tears up his victim. He did this, but he will heal our wounds. He has hurt us and made us fall down, but he will treat our wounds and bind them up so they will heal.

Hosea 6:2

After two days he will revive us; he will raise us up on the third day

This represents a short period of time. Israel believes God will quickly come to rescue them from their enemies. (See: [Idiom](#))

two days ... the third day

"2 days ... day 3" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he will revive us](#)
- [that we may live](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

ULT

² After two days [he will revive us](#); he will raise us up on the third day, [that we may live](#) before him.

UST

² After the second day he will restore our strength; and on the third day he will raise us up, so we will live close to him.

Hosea 6:3

Let us know Yahweh

Here “know” means not only to learn God’s character and laws, but also to become faithful to him.

His coming out is as sure as the dawn

Yahweh will come to help his people just as surely as the sun rises each morning. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Let us know](#)
- [let us press on](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [persecute](#)

ULT

³ [Let us know](#); [let us press on](#) to know [Yahweh](#). His going forth is sure as the dawn; he will come to us like the showers, like the spring rains that water [the earth](#).”

UST

³ Try to know Yahweh; do all you can to be faithful to him. It is as certain as tomorrow’s sunrise that he will come to us; he will come to us like the rain, like the rain comes in the spring on our fields.”

Hosea 6:4

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh is speaking.

what will I do with you?

God is expressing that his patience is coming to an end and what remains is judgment. Alternate translation: "it is hard to know what to do with you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [O Ephraim](#)
- [O Judah](#)
- [Your love](#)
- [that goes away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

⁴ [O Ephraim](#), what will I do with you? [O Judah](#), what will I do with you? [Your love](#) is like a morning cloud, like the dew [that goes away](#) early.

UST

⁴ But Yahweh says, "What can I do with you, you people of Ephraim? What can I do with you, you people of the tribe of Judah? You love me for just as long as the clouds come in the morning before they disappear again. You love me for just as long as the dew stays before the warm sun shines on it.

Hosea 6:5

So I have cut them to pieces by the prophets

Through his prophets, Yahweh has pronounced destruction on the rebellious nation. The destruction, here called “cutting to pieces,” is as sure as the condemnation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Your decrees are like the light that shines out

Here the prophet Hosea is speaking to God. He may mean that when God gives the command for someone to die as punishment, it is like a bolt of lightning that strikes. Or he may mean that God’s commandments allow people to know the truth, just as light makes objects visible. (See: [Simile](#))

Your decrees

Alternate translation: “Yahweh’s commands”

Translation Words - ULT

- [I have killed them](#)
- [My judgments](#)
- [that goes forth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [statute](#)

ULT

⁵ Therefore I have cut them to pieces by the prophets, [I have killed them](#) with the words of my mouth. [My judgments](#) are like the light [that goes forth](#).

UST

⁵ I sent my prophets to you, and it was as though I had cut you into pieces when they spoke the messages I gave them. You were devastated by what they said to you. It was as though I had killed you with the words I spoke to you. I spoke about how I would punish you. I told you by the prophets that I was angry with you, and they told you this. “Yahweh, you will punish them by commanding that it happen; your words are like lightning bolts.”

Hosea 6:6

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

For I desire faithfulness and not sacrifice

This grammatical construction in Hebrew signals here the idea of “more than,” as the next line shows (“and the knowledge of God more than burnt offerings”). Alternate translation: “For I desire faithfulness more than sacrifice”

Translation Words - ULT

- I desire
- steadfast love
- sacrifice
- God

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- God
- delight
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

⁶ For I desire steadfast love and not sacrifice, and the knowledge of God rather than burnt offerings.

UST

⁶ Yahweh says, “I want you to be faithful to me forever. I want that more than I want you to offer me sacrifices. I want you to know me—that is much more important to me than when you give me offerings that the priests burn on the altar.

Hosea 6:7

Like Adam

This could mean: (1) this refers to Adam, the first man or (2) this is a metonym that represents the people who live in a city in Israel called Adam. Alternate translation: "Like the people in the city of Adam" or (3) this refers to people in general. The word "Adam" means "man" or "humankind." Alternate translation: "Like all of humankind" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the covenant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)

ULT

⁷ Like Adam they have transgressed [the covenant](#); there they were unfaithful to me.

UST

⁷ But like Adam, the first man, the covenant that they made with me and that I, Yahweh, made with them—they broke it. When they did that, they were not faithful to me.

Hosea 6:8

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Gilead is a city ... with footprints of blood

“Footprints of blood” probably represents the evildoers and their acts of murder. (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁸ Gilead is a city of evildoers with footprints of blood.

UST

⁸ Gilead is a city of people who do wicked things; in the streets of that city are the footprints of murderers.

Hosea 6:9

the priests band together to commit murder on the way to Shechem

We do not know what this refers to. Were priests actually guilty of attacking people on their way to Shechem, which was an important religious and political center? Or is the prophet saying that the priests have “killed” true knowledge and worship of Yahweh? It is best to translate this expression as plainly as possible.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)

ULT

⁹ As a band of raiders lie in wait for a man, so [the priests](#) band together to commit murder on the way to Shechem; surely they have committed shameful crimes.

UST

⁹ As robbers make their plans to hide and then rob someone walking past them, so are the priests—they band together making their plans, just like the robbers, and they commit murder along the way to Shechem. They commit terrible crimes.

Hosea 6:10

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Ephraim's prostitution

Here "prostitution" refers to Ephraim's worship of false gods. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Israel has become unclean

Israel has become unacceptable to God because of her actions.

Translation Words - ULT

- [In the house of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [In the house of Israel](#) I have seen a horrible thing; the harlotry of Ephraim is there; [Israel](#) is defiled.

UST

¹⁰ Among the people of Israel, I have seen a horrible thing— the people of Ephraim worship idols everywhere. The people of Israel have become filthy by what they have done.

Hosea 6:11

For you also, Judah, a harvest has been appointed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I have set a time of harvest for you also, Judah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

harvest

Here "harvest" represents God's final judgment on Israel and Judah. (See: [Metaphor](#))

fortunes

prosperity and security

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [a harvest](#)
- [the fortunes of](#)
- [my people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea, Judah](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch](#)
- [harvest, reap](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹¹ For you also, [Judah, a harvest](#) has been appointed. When I restore [the fortunes of my people](#),

UST

¹¹ And for you also, you people of Judah, I have set for you a time when I will separate out your good people from your bad people. Just as in the harvest when you take all the crops in, and you keep the good and throw away the bad, that is what is coming for you, people of Judah. That will be the day when I bring back the blessings and riches of my people once more."

Hosea 7

Hosea 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues using poetic forms to speak of Yahweh's anger over the sin of the people. The people are not seeking Yahweh; they are seeking other gods and looking for salvation from other nations like Egypt and Assyria. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Baking

Baking of bread is an extended metaphor in this chapter. Yahweh uses various aspects of this activity to show his displeasure with their sins. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Israel and Ephraim

This chapter begins by using two different names for the same group of people: Israel and Ephraim. It also mentions Samaria, which was the capital of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Hosea 7:1

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

I want to heal Israel

Making Israel obedient to God again and receivers of his blessing is spoken of as if it were healing. (See: [Metaphor](#))

for they practice deceit

The people are selling and buying products dishonestly. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

marauding band

This is a group of people who are attacking other people without cause.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the sin of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Samaria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [iniquity](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

ULT

¹ when I would heal [Israel](#), [the sin of Ephraim](#) is exposed, as well as the evil deeds of [Samaria](#), for they practice deceit; the thief breaks in, and the marauding band raids outside.

UST

¹ As often as I try to heal Israel, the people openly show that they are sinning, and the people in the city of Samaria show the same thing. They lie and cheat in their buying and selling; they are like lawless men who attack people who are walking in the streets.

Hosea 7:2

their deeds surround them

The people's evil deeds are probably spoken of here as if they were other people ready to accuse them of their crimes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

they are before my face

Here God is represented by his "face" which emphasizes his presence and awareness. Alternate translation: "and I see it all" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their evil](#)
- [my face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

² But they do not realize in their hearts that I remember all [their evil](#). Now their deeds surround them; they are before [my face](#).

UST

² But they do not take a moment to think that I, Yahweh, see everything they do. Everywhere they go, they commit evil, and I see it all.

Hosea 7:3

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking. The Hebrew text is not clear in various places. However, many people interpret it as describing the royal officials as being unfaithful to God, and also as planning to assassinate the king, and then carrying out their plans. This seems to have happened more than once. These crimes are mentioned as illustrations of the wickedness into which the nation has sunk.

Translation Words - ULT

- By their evil
- they make...glad
- the king
- the princes

Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- king, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

³ By their evil they make the king glad, and by their lies the princes.

UST

³ The wicked things they do bring delight to their king, and the king's officials are happy when they tell lies.

Hosea 7:4

They are all adulterers

The people committed spiritual adultery by worshiping idols and being unfaithful to Yahweh. They were probably also being unfaithful to their husbands or wives by sleeping with other people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

like an oven heated by the baker

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This means the people had strong desires to do evil. Alternate translation: "like an oven which the baker heats" (See: [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

kneading of the dough

This is a part of the process of making bread.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to stir the fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,](#)

ULT

⁴ They are all adulterers, like an oven heated by the baker, who ceases [to stir the fire](#) from the kneading of the dough until it is leavened.

UST

⁴ They are all sexually immoral; they burn with lust like a baker's oven that is burning hot; once he lights the fire, he does not need to put any more wood on it, until he is ready to bake the bread.

Hosea 7:5

On the day of our king

This is perhaps a festival held by the king.

He reached out with his hand

This probably means to unite or join with someone. It may mean that the king joins with his officials to mock things or people that should not be mocked, even God himself. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [our king](#)
- [the princes](#)
- [with the heat](#)
- [his hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁵ On the day of [our king the princes](#) became sick [with the heat](#) of wine. He stretched out [his hand](#) with those who were mocking.

UST

⁵ At the king's festivals, his officials do outrageous things because they are drunk with wine, and the king joins in with them as they mock me.

Hosea 7:6

General Information:

The court officials' plotting is described. Their anger is what motivates them to kill their king.

For with hearts like an oven

This means like a fire burns in an oven, these people have strong evil desires within them. The people's desires are represented by their "hearts." (See: [Simile](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Their anger smolders

The word "smolders" means something is burning slowly without a flame. Alternate translation: "Their anger grows slowly and quietly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

it burns high like a flaming fire

The intensity of their anger is spoken of as if it was a very hot fire. Alternate translation: "it gets very intense" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with their hearts](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)

ULT

⁶ For [with their hearts](#) like an oven, they approach their intrigue. Their anger smolders all night; in the morning it burns like a flaming fire.

UST

⁶ But these same officials then set about making plans to murder the king. They are quietly angry all night, and they are openly angry in the morning.

Hosea 7:7

They all are as hot as an oven

This compares their anger to the heat that comes from an oven. (See: [Simile](#))

they devour those who rule over them

This seems to mean that the court officials kill their kings. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they devour](#)
- [their kings](#)
- [calls](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [devour](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁷ All of them are hot as an oven, [and they devour](#) those who rule over them. All [their kings](#) have fallen; none of them [calls](#) on me.

UST

⁷ All those officials become so angry at the king, that they kill all their rulers. In the end, all their kings were killed; not one of them called on me, Yahweh, to help."

Hosea 7:8

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Ephraim mixes himself among the peoples

This is probably a reference to the efforts made by the northern kingdom's kings to ally themselves with other nations for protection against attack.

Ephraim is a flat cake that has not been turned over

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Here "Ephraim" refers to the northern kingdom of Israel. The nation is weak, as flat bread that has not been doubled over in the oven by the baker for more strength. Alternate translation: "The people of Ephraim are like a cake that no one has turned over" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- Ephraim
- among the peoples

Translation Words - UST

- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- people, people group

ULT

⁸ Ephraim mixes himself among the peoples. Ephraim is a flat cake that has not been turned over.

UST

⁸ "Israel joins with other people groups, but all the people are like a flat cake that is only cooked on one side; they are weak.

Hosea 7:9

Gray hairs are sprinkled on him

Here “gray hairs” represent old age. (See: [Metonymy](#))

but he does not know it

However, this “old age” is clearly a way of saying that the northern kingdom is getting weaker and weaker, because the nation does not know it is “old.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [have devoured](#)
- [his strength](#)
- [does...know it](#)
- [does...know it](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [devour](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

⁹ Foreigners [have devoured his strength](#), but he does not [know it](#). Gray hairs are sprinkled on him, but he does not [know it](#).

UST

⁹ People who come from far away have taken away Israel's strength. The nation is growing very weak, like an old man whose hair is turning gray. But the nation does not know it is weak.

Hosea 7:10

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

The pride of Israel testifies against him

This describes “pride” as a person who testifies against the people of Israel in court. This means their prideful attitude and behavior show that they are guilty of no longer obeying Yahweh. (See: [Personification](#))

nor have they sought him

Israel’s lack of interest in Yahweh is spoken of as if he was lost and they were not trying to find him. Alternate translation: “nor have they tried to get him to pay attention to them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in spite of all this

Here “this” refers God allowing foreigners to defeat them and make them weak.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [they have...returned](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁰ The pride of [Israel](#) testifies against him; yet [they have](#) not [returned](#) to [Yahweh their God](#), nor have they sought him, for all this.

UST

¹⁰ Israel is so proud that everyone else sees it. Even so, they will not return to me—to Yahweh their God. They will not try to persuade me to have mercy on them, no matter what happens to them.

Hosea 7:11

Ephraim is like a dove, gullible and without sense

Doves were thought to be foolish birds. (See: [Simile](#))

Egypt ... Assyria

These were powerful nations that Israel could ask for help.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- sense
- calling
- to Egypt
- then going
- to Assyria

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- heart
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- walk, walked

ULT

¹¹ Ephraim is like a dove, silly and without sense, calling to Egypt, then going to Assyria.

UST

¹¹ Israel is like a foolish bird, a dove that anyone can easily deceive. He calls out first to Egypt, and then like a bird, he flies up to Assyria.

Hosea 7:12

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

I will spread my net over them

This is a way to catch birds. Yahweh continues to compare the people of Israel to doves. When they go to Egypt or Assyria for help, Yahweh will punish them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will bring them down like the birds of the sky

Yahweh speaks of the way he will judge Israel as if they were birds that he would catch in a net. Alternate translation: "I will hunt them like birds" or "I will catch them like a hunter catches birds" (See: [Simile](#))

in their flocking together

This expression extends the metaphor of the birds.

Translation Words - ULT

- [they go](#)
- [the sky](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

¹² When [they go](#), I will spread my net over them, I will bring them down like the birds of [the sky](#). I will discipline them in accordance with the report to their assembly.

UST

¹² But when they are on their way there, I will spread my net over them, I will bring them down as a hunter brings down birds from the air into a net. I will punish them all together.

Hosea 7:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- would have redeemed them

Translation Words - UST

- redeem, redeemer, redemption

ULT

¹³ Woe to them! For they have strayed from me. Destruction to them! For they have rebelled against me! I would have redeemed them, but they spoke lies against me.

UST

¹³ How terrible it will be for my people, because they have abandoned me! They will perish because they have rebelled against me. I wanted to rescue them, but they kept telling lies against me.

Hosea 7:14

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

they wail on their beds

It was usual for idol worshipers to eat ceremonial meals while reclining on couches or beds.

they turn away from me

Here no longer worshiping God is spoken of as turning away from him. Alternate translation: "they no longer worship me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with their heart](#)
- [grain](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)

ULT

14 They do not cry to me [with their heart](#), but they wail on their beds. They gather together for [grain](#) and new wine; they turn away from me. ^[1]

UST

14 They do not cry out to me; they do not call to me from their hearts; they only lie on their beds and howl and cry out. They meet together to ask their idols for their grain and new wine. They have rebelled against me.

Hosea 7:15

Though I trained them and strengthened their arms

This may be a military metaphor, in which God training the Israelites to love him and obey him is spoken of as if he had been training their men for war. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and strengthened](#)
- [evil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Though I trained [and strengthened](#) their arms, yet they plot [evil](#) against me.

UST

¹⁵ Even though I trained them and helped them become strong, even now they are planning to do evil against me.

Hosea 7:16

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

They are like a slack bow

That is, a bow that has no bowstring, or that has no tension. (See: [Simile](#))

because of the insolence of their tongues

Here “tongue” refers to what the officials say. Alternate translation: “because they insult me” or “because they curse me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

This will become their mockery in the land of Egypt

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **mockery**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “This is why people in Egypt will mock and laugh at Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They return](#)
- [Their princes](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [Egypt](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

16 [They return](#), but not upward. They are like a slack bow. [Their princes](#) will fall [by the sword](#) because of the insolence of their tongues. This will be their derision in the land of [Egypt](#). 7:14 ^[1], which the Hebrew text has, some ancient copies and many modern versions have, an allusion to the pagan custom of idol worshipers wounding themselves in the frenzy of prayer.

UST

16 They go this way and that, but never to me, God Most High. They are like a bow that cannot shoot. Their officers will be killed by their enemies' swords; they will die because they have insulted me. This is why the people in Egypt will insult them.”

Hosea 8

Hosea 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues to use the poetic form to communicate several other ways the people of Israel have sinned against God. First, Yahweh notes that they have set up a king without consulting him. Next, they set up or reinstalled the golden calves of Samaria. Last, they were seeking help from other nations like Egypt and Assyria. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

This chapter contains some references to the “calf of Samaria.” This most likely refers to an image that was set up by an earlier king of Israel. He did this in order to discourage his people from going to Jerusalem, which was part of the southern kingdom of Judah.

Hosea 8:1

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking about the coming of the Assyrian army to attack the northern kingdom.

An eagle is coming over the house of Yahweh

The eagle, a bird of prey, is sometimes used to represent the enemies of Israel. Alternate translation: "As an eagle hunts another animal, the enemies of Israel are coming to capture my people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

broken my covenant

Here "broken" represents "disobeyed," "violated." (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Put the trumpet](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my covenant](#)
- [my law](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)

ULT

¹ "[Put the trumpet](#) to your lips! One like a vulture is over [the house of Yahweh](#) because they have transgressed [my covenant](#) and rebelled against [my law](#)."

UST

¹ Yahweh says, "Get a trumpet and blow it. There are enemies swooping down over my people, as an eagle swoops down over a victim. This is because my people have left my covenant with them and have violated the law I gave them."

Hosea 8:2

know you

Alternate translation: "are faithful to you"

Translation Words - ULT

- My God
- in Israel
- we...know you

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

² They cry out to me, 'My God, we in Israel know you.'

UST

² My people Israel cry out to me and say, 'Our God, we are loyal to you!'

Hosea 8:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the good
- the enemy
- will pursue him

Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- persecute

ULT

³ Israel has rejected the good; the enemy will pursue him.

UST

³ But the people of Israel have thrown away what is good, so their enemies will chase after them.

Hosea 8:4

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

but it was only so they might be cut off

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "but the result will be that I will destroy the people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They have appointed princes](#)
- [I did...know](#)
- [With their silver](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [they might be cut off](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

⁴ They have set up kings, but not by me. [They have appointed princes](#), but I did not [know](#). [With their silver and gold](#) they have made idols for themselves, so that [they might be cut off](#)."

UST

⁴ Israel has appointed kings for themselves, but they did not consult with me about it. They chose their own kings without asking me to approve them. They took their silver and gold and formed them into the idols they worshiped, but the people will perish as a result."

Hosea 8:5

Your calf has been rejected

This could mean: (1) this is the prophet speaking. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has rejected your calf" or (2) Yahweh is speaking. Alternate translation: "I myself have rejected your calf" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Your calf

The people worshiped an idol that looked like a calf, so Yahweh is speaking of their worship as if it were the calf itself. Alternate translation: "Because you worship your calf idol, your worship" (See: [Metonymy](#))

My anger is burning against these people

Anger is often spoken of as if it were a fire. Alternate translation: "I am very angry with these people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

For how long will they stay guilty?

Yahweh asks this question to express his anger about his people being impure. "I am angry with these people because they have no desire to be innocent." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [O Samaria](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

ULT

⁵ "Your calf has been rejected, [O Samaria](#). My anger burns against them. How long will they be incapable of innocence?"

UST

⁵ The prophet says, "Yes, Yahweh has rejected your idol, you people of Samaria—an idol made in the form of a calf!" Yahweh says, "Perhaps these people will never again be innocent of evildoing. I am very angry with them!"

Hosea 8:6

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Translation Words - ULT

- from Israel
- is...God
- Samaria

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Samaria, Samaritan

ULT

⁶ For from Israel is even this; a craftsman made it; it is not God! Surely the calf of Samaria will be broken to pieces.

UST

⁶ The shame of it is that this idol came from Israel! A craftsman made it. It is only an idol; it cannot be the true and living God! I will ensure that someone will smash it to bits.

Hosea 8:7

For the people sow the wind and reap the whirlwind

To sow or plant the wind is to act in useless or destructive ways. To reap the whirlwind is to suffer disaster from one's own actions. (See: [Metaphor](#))

The standing grain has no heads

Here "head" refers to the part of the plant where the grain is. A stalk with no head has nothing to give to the farmer. In the same way, Israel's actions will result in nothing good. (See: [Idiom](#))

If it does come to maturity, foreigners will devour it

If any of Israel's actions do happen to result in something good, Israel's enemies will come and take it from them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the wind](#)
- [reap](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [harvest, reap](#)

ULT

⁷ For they sow [the wind](#) and [reap](#) the whirlwind. The standing grain has no heads; it yields no flour. If it were to yield, strangers would devour it.

UST

⁷ This is because these people do useless things, so something terrible will destroy them. Their grain standing in the fields will give no harvest. And even if it does, foreign soldiers will eat everything it produces.

Hosea 8:8

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Israel is swallowed up

“swallowed” means to be defeated and taken into exile. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “The enemies of Israel have taken the Israelites away to other lands” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [among the nations](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

⁸ [Israel](#) is swallowed up; they are now [among the nations](#) like a vessel in which no one delights.

UST

⁸ Other nations have destroyed Israel's power. Now Israel is like an old, broken pot that no one wants.

Hosea 8:9

like a wild donkey all alone

People often think of donkeys as being stubborn. This means the people of Israel refused to listen to Yahweh but instead went to the people of Assyria for help. (See: [Simile](#))

Ephraim has hired lovers for herself

Ephraim's alliances with other nations are spoken of as if they had paid them to become prostitutes for Ephraim. Alternate translation: "The people of Israel have tried to pay other nations to protect them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Assyria](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

⁹ For they have gone up [to Assyria](#), a wild donkey all alone. [Ephraim](#) has hired lovers for herself.

UST

⁹ They asked the king of Assyria for help; they were like a wild donkey wandering off by itself. The people of Israel have tried to pay other nations to protect them.

Hosea 8:10

because of the oppression of the king of princes

That is, because the Assyrian king, also called “the Great King,” will make the people suffer.

Translation Words - ULT

- among the nations
- They will...waste away
- the king of
- princes

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingship
- nation
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- profane, profaned

ULT

¹⁰ Even though they hire lovers among the nations, I will now gather them together. They will begin to waste away because of the burden of the king of princes.

UST

¹⁰ Although they do this, I will soon gather them up to destroy them. They will begin to become poor because they will have to pay money to Assyria's king.

Hosea 8:11

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- altars
- altars

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar
- Ephraim, Ephraimite

ULT

¹¹ Since Ephraim has multiplied altars for sin offerings, they have become altars for sinning for him.

UST

¹¹ The people of Ephraim have built many altars on which to offer sacrifices for their sins; however, these altars have become places where the people commit terrible sins against me.

Hosea 8:12

I could write down my law for them ten thousand times, but they would

Yahweh is describing a hypothetical situation. Here “ten thousand times” is an exaggeration that means no matter how many times he gave the people the law, they would still refuse to obey him. Alternate translation: “Even if I wrote down my law for them very many times, they would” (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

ten thousand

“10,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my law](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#)

ULT

¹² Were I to write for him [my law](#) ten thousand times, they would be regarded as something strange.

UST

¹² Even if I wrote out for the people of Israel my laws ten thousand times, they would refuse to obey them. They would say they had never heard of them.

Hosea 8:13

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

They will return to Egypt

Because of their sin, God will send his people away as slaves to the Egyptians.

Translation Words - ULT

- As for...sacrificial
- they sacrifice
- to Egypt
- meat
- and eat it
- but Yahweh
- their iniquity
- and punish
- their sins
- will return

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- flesh
- iniquity
- restore, restoration
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- devour
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

¹³ As for my sacrificial gifts, they sacrifice meat and eat it, but Yahweh does not accept them. Now he will remember their iniquity and punish their sins. They will return to Egypt.

UST

¹³ Let us think about the sacrifices that they give to me. They sacrifice the meat and then they eat it; but I, Yahweh, am not pleased with those sacrifices. I will think about their sins and will punish the people for them. I will make them go back to Egypt.

Hosea 8:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- palaces
- Judah
- fire
- it will devour

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- temple, house, house of God
- Judah
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

ULT

¹⁴ Israel has forgotten his Maker and has built palaces. Judah has multiplied fortified cities, but I will send fire on his cities; it will devour his fortresses.

UST

¹⁴ And why has this happened? The people of Israel have forgotten me, the God who made them a nation. Instead of honoring me, they have built huge homes to live in. And instead of worshiping Yahweh, the people of Judah have built walls around their cities for protection. So this is what I, Yahweh, will do: I will send a fire that will destroy all their palaces and all their fortified cities.”

Hosea 9

Hosea 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The chapter is written in poetic form to speak of Yahweh's displeasure with Israel's sins. He is showing the many ways in which they do not honor him. The priests and kings do not understand how they have totally broken their covenant with Yahweh. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [covenant](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Exile

Because the covenant has been broken, the people will be exiled into another land. This actually shows the mercy of God toward his people. He did not destroy them; he simply moved them to another place. However, this chapter goes into detail about many parts of their society to show how far they have moved away from truly worshiping Yahweh. (See: [mercy](#), [merciful](#) and [people of God](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Change in speaker

In verse 16, Yahweh is speaking; but in verse 17, Hosea starts speaking. There is a change in pronouns; the use of "my God" must imply that someone other than Yahweh is speaking.

Hosea 9:1

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

Translation Words - ULT

- Do...rejoice
- O Israel
- like the peoples
- you have played the harlot
- your God
- You have loved
- the threshing floors
- the threshing floors

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- love, beloved
- grain, grainfields
- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- people, people group
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- thresh

ULT

¹ Do not rejoice, O Israel, with joy like the peoples. For you have played the harlot, forsaking your God. You have loved the wages of a harlot on all the threshing floors.

UST

¹ Hosea says this: Do not be happy, O Israel; do not celebrate like other people groups! You have been unfaithful to your God. You have refused to do what he told you. At every place where people thresh their grain, you give your offerings and sacrifices to idols. You are just like men who pay money to sleep with women.

Hosea 9:2

But the threshing floor and the winepress will not feed them

This describes the threshing floor and the winepress as if they were humans that can feed someone. This means that the harvest will not provide enough grain for threshing to meet the needs of the people, and that it will not provide the grapes for pressing to make enough wine. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the new wine will fail them

There will not be enough grape juice to make wine with.

Translation Words - ULT

- [The threshing floor](#)
- [will fail](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [deceive, lie, deception, illusions](#)
- [thresh](#)

ULT

² [The threshing floor](#) and the winepress will not feed them; and the new wine [will fail](#) them.

UST

² Now you will not have enough grain or wine to feed your people. You will have no hope for any new wine, for the vines will fail you.

Hosea 9:3

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

Yahweh's land

This expression signals that Yahweh continues to view the land of Israel as his property, not the property of the Israelites.

unclean food

This is food that the Israelites would normally refuse to eat because it would make them unacceptable to Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- instead...will return
- Ephraim
- to Egypt
- they will eat

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- devour
- return, turn back

ULT

³ They will not remain in the land of Yahweh; instead, Ephraim will return to Egypt, and they will eat unclean food in Assyria.

UST

³ The people of Israel will not continue to live in the land that Yahweh has chosen as his own. Instead, they will go back to Egypt one day. And in Assyria they will have to eat the kind of food that God had forbidden them to eat.

Hosea 9:4

Their sacrifices will be to them like mourners' food

Here "mourners' food" refers to what people would eat while they mourning because they were defiled and not acceptable to God. This means Yahweh will consider the people's sacrifices to be defiled and he will not accept them. (See: [Simile](#))

For their food will be for themselves only; it will not come into the house of Yahweh

The people of Israel will have food to eat, but Yahweh will not accept it as a sacrifice.

it will not come into the house of Yahweh

The unclean food is spoken of as if it were able to go places by itself. Of course, people actually had to take it with them. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wine offerings](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their sacrifices](#)
- [who eat it](#)
- [their bread](#)
- [into the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

ULT

⁴ They will not pour out [wine offerings to Yahweh](#), neither will [their sacrifices](#) be pleasing to him. It will be like the bread of mourners to them: all [who eat it](#) will be defiled. For [their bread](#) will be for themselves only; it will not come [into the house of Yahweh](#).

UST

⁴ No longer will they pour out wine to offer it to Yahweh; their sacrifices will not please him at all. Their sacrifices will be as unacceptable to God as the food that people eat at funerals; and everyone who eats that food becomes unacceptable to God. That food will be all they eat; they will not be able to bring it into Yahweh's house to offer it to him.

Hosea 9:5

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

What will you do on the day of an appointed festival, on the day of a festival for Yahweh?

Hosea uses this question to emphasize that the people will no longer be able to observe their festivals when their enemies defeat them and take them captive. Alternate translation: "You will not be able to celebrate the festivals that Yahweh appointed for you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁵ What will you do on the day of an appointed festival, and on the day of a festival for Yahweh?

UST

⁵ There, in a country far from your home, you will not be able to celebrate the festivals that Yahweh commanded you to celebrate.

the day of an appointed festival ... the day of a festival for Yahweh

Both of these mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- an appointed festival
- a festival for
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- feast, feasting
- feast, feasting

Hosea 9:6

if they escape

Here “they” still refers to the people of Israel. You can continue stating this is second person. Alternate translation: “if you escape” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Egypt will gather them, and Memphis will bury them

Egypt and Memphis refer to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the army of Egypt will capture you. You will die there, and the people in the city of Memphis will bury you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

As for their treasures of silver—sharp briers will possess them

Briers growing in the places where Israelites stored their silver is spoken of as if the briers were human enemies that would take the Israelite’s precious possessions for themselves. Alternate translation: “Sharp briers will grow where they store their treasures of silver” (See: [Metaphor](#))

sharp briers will possess them, and thorns will fill their tents

Here “sharp briers” and “thorns” mean the same thing. To have briers and thorns growing represents a land that has become desolate and like a wilderness. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

their tents

Here “tents” represents the Israelites’ homes. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they go away](#)
- [but Egypt](#)
- [will bury them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

⁶ For behold, [they go away](#) from destruction, [but Egypt](#) will gather them, Memphis [will bury them](#). As for their treasures of silver— sharp briers will possess them, thorns will be in their tents.

UST

⁶ Look! If you escape and the Assyrians do not kill you, the army of Egypt will capture you. You will die there, and the people in the city of Memphis will bury you. All your wealth in silver will be covered up and lost when the desert plants grow into your homes and take them over.

Hosea 9:7

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

The days for punishment are coming; the days for retribution are coming

Hosea says these two similar phrases to emphasize that Yahweh will soon judge the people of Israel for their evil deeds. (See: [Parallelism](#))

The prophet is a fool, and the inspired man is insane

These phrases mean basically the same thing. This could mean: (1) that the people regarded the prophets as madmen or (2) that the prophets had become crazy because of the sins that the people had committed. (See: [Parallelism](#))

The prophet is a fool, and the inspired man is insane

Here “prophet” and “inspired man” both mean a person who claims to receive messages from God. It is implied that these people are false prophets and only thought they received messages from God. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

because of your great iniquity and great hostility

The phrases “great iniquity” and “great hostility” share similar meanings. The iniquity of the people manifested itself in hostility towards Yahweh and his prophets. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Let...know these things](#)
- [The prophet](#)
- [your...iniquity](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [iniquity](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁷ The days of punishment have come; the days of retribution have come. Let [Israel know these things](#). The prophet is a fool, the man of the spirit is insane, because of your great [iniquity](#) and great hostility.

UST

⁷ It is now the time for God to punish you; the time has come in which God will pay you back for every sin you have committed. And all you people of Israel must realize that these things will happen. So your false prophets are fools, and those who you thought were inspired by God are actually insane. This is because you have sinned so much and because you have become Yahweh's enemies.

Hosea 9:8

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

The prophet is the watchman for my God over Ephraim

A “watchman” watches outside his city to see if danger is coming. The prophet warning the people when they are sinning and are in danger of having his God punish them is spoken of as if he were a watchman for the city. Alternate translation: “The prophet is like a watchman for God over Ephraim” (See: [Metaphor](#))

The prophet is the watchman for my God over Ephraim

Some versions translate this passage as “The prophet with my God is the watchman over Ephraim.”

The prophet is

This refers to prophets in general that God has appointed. Alternate translation: “Prophets are” or “True prophets are” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

Ephraim

Here “Ephraim” represents all the people of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a bird snare is on all of his paths

A “bird snare” is a trap used to catch a bird. This means the people of Israel do whatever they can to stop God’s prophet. Alternate translation: “the people set a trap for him wherever he goes” or “the people do all they can to harm him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The prophet](#)
- [my God](#)
- [his God](#)
- [over Ephraim](#)
- [in the house of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [temple, house, house of God](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

⁸ [The prophet](#) is the watchman with [my God over Ephraim](#). But the snare of a fowler is on all of his ways, and hostility [in the house of his God](#).

UST

⁸ True prophets are people whom God has assigned to guard the people of Israel. But everywhere they go, others set traps for them; even in the temple of their God, others hate them.

Hosea 9:9

They have deeply corrupted themselves as in the days of Gibeah

“The people of Israel have sinned and become very corrupt as they did at Gibeah long ago.” This is probably a reference to the shocking actions of the tribe of Benjamin recounted in Judges 19-21.

Translation Words - ULT

- their iniquity
- he will punish
- their sins

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

ULT

⁹ They have deeply corrupted themselves as in the days of Gibeah. He will remember their iniquity, he will punish their sins.

UST

⁹ The people have polluted themselves by sinning as the Israelites did at Gibeah long ago. God will not forget the wicked things they did; he will certainly punish them.

Hosea 9:10

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

When I found Israel

This refers to when Yahweh first started his relationship with the people of Israel by claiming them as his own special people.

it was like finding grapes in the wilderness. Like the very first fruit of the season on the fig tree

Both of these statements emphasize situations that are pleasing to a person. This means Yahweh was very happy when his relationship with the people of Israel started. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Simile](#))

Baal Peor

This is the name of a mountain in the land of Moab where the false god Baal was worshiped. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wilderness](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [your fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Like grapes [in the wilderness](#), I found [Israel](#). Like the first fruit on the fig tree in its first season, I saw [your fathers](#). But they came to Baal Peor, and they devoted themselves to that shameful thing. They became detestable like that which they loved.

UST

¹⁰ Yahweh says, "When I found Israel, it was like someone finding grapes growing in the wilderness. When I saw your ancestors, they were like the very first figs that appear in the year, figs growing on a young fig tree. But when they came to Mount Peor, they gave themselves completely to that disgusting idol Baal, and they became as detestable as the idol they loved.

Hosea 9:11

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

their glory will fly away like a bird

The people of Ephraim, or the northern kingdom of Israel, will lose everything that makes other nations respect them. Their glory will quickly disappear, as a bird flies away. Alternate translation: “their glory will be like a bird that flies away from them” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [As for Ephraim](#)
- [their glory](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

11 [As for Ephraim](#), [their glory](#) will fly away like a bird-- no birth, no pregnancy, and no conception.

UST

11 The honor of Ephraim is like a bird that is flying away. I will make their women so they cannot give birth, no woman will be pregnant, and no one will even conceive a child in the womb.

Hosea 9:12

when I turn away from them

When God stops helping the northern kingdom, it will be as if he physically turned away from them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they bring up](#)
- [their children](#)
- [until no one is left](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Adam](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)

ULT

¹² Even if [they bring up their children](#), I will bereave them [until no one is left](#).
Yes, woe to them indeed when I turn away from them!

UST

¹² Even if they raise children not their own, I will take them from their mothers. It will be the worst that could happen to them, when I abandon them!

Hosea 9:13

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

I have seen Ephraim, just like Tyre, planted in a meadow

This speaks of the people being in a safe place as if they were a tree planted in a peaceful meadow. Alternate translation: "The nation of Israel was once beautiful and pleasant like the city of Tyre, like a tree that someone plants in a meadow" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Ephraim ... Tyre

Here "Ephraim" represents the whole northern kingdom of Israel. These places refer to the people who live in them. (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

but Ephraim will bring out his children

The word "children" are the people from that nation. Alternate translation: "but the people of Israel will bring out their children" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)
- [his children](#)
- [him who slaughters](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

ULT

¹³ [Ephraim](#), as I have seen, is like Tyre planted in a meadow; but Ephraim will bring out [his children](#) to [him who slaughters](#)."

UST

¹³ I have seen the people of Israel; they were like Tyre; they were like a tree planted in a beautiful meadow. But they will have to lead their own children out to their enemies, who will slaughter them."

Hosea 9:14

Give them, Yahweh—what will you give them? Give them

Hosea uses a question to emphasize that he wants Yahweh to give the people of Israel what they deserve. Alternate translation: “This is what I ask you, Yahweh, to give them: give them” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

a miscarrying womb

To “miscarry” means that a pregnancy ends too early and the baby dies. Hosea is asking that all the nation’s women be like that.

Translation Words - ULT

- [O Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Give them, [O Yahweh](#)—what will you give? Give them a miscarrying womb and dry breasts.

UST

¹⁴ Hosea says, Yahweh, give them—what should you give them? Give them wombs that miscarry, and let their mothers’ breasts have no milk for their babies.

Hosea 9:15

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

I will drive them out of my house

Yahweh is stating that he will force Israel out of his land, the land of Canaan. Here “my house” represents Canaan. (See: [Metonymy](#))

their officials

the men who serve the king

Translation Words - ULT

- [their evil](#)
- [is in Gilgal](#)
- [of my house](#)
- [their princes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Gilgal](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

¹⁵ “All [their evil is in Gilgal](#), indeed I came to hate them there. Because of the wickedness of their deeds, I will drive them out [of my house](#). I will love them no more; all [their princes](#) are rebels.

UST

¹⁵ Yahweh says, “Because of all the wicked things my people did at Gilgal, that is where I started to hate them. And because of all the sinful deeds they have done, I will drive them out of the place they live. I will not love them any more; all their officials fight against me.

Hosea 9:16

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking in verse 16. Hosea begins speaking in verse 17.

Ephraim is diseased, and their root is dried up; they bear no fruit

Yahweh speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a diseased tree that does not produce fruit and is ready to be cut down. This is a statement that the people have become weak, and that soon their enemies will come and defeat them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [I will kill](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)

ULT

16 [Ephraim](#) is stricken; their root is dried up; they will bear no [fruit](#). Even if they give birth, [I will kill](#) the precious ones of their womb."

UST

16 Ephraim is like a vine that has dried up and produces no fruit. Even if they give birth, I will put to death those children they love."

Hosea 9:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- My God
- among the nations

Translation Words - UST

- God
- nation

ULT

¹⁷ My God will reject them because they have not listened to him. They will become wanderers among the nations.

UST

¹⁷ Hosea says, My God rejected the people of Israel because they have not obeyed him, and they will wander from one nation to another.

Hosea 10

Hosea 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written in poetic form and continues the theme of Israel's many sins against Yahweh. Even though Israel prospered for a time as they multiplied their sins, Yahweh was leading them toward destruction. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh's relationship to his people was not based on his people's actions. Even though they rebelled, Yahweh still desired to rescue them. (See: [people of God](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Jacob

The repeated use of different names for the two kingdoms can be confusing. In verse 11, "Ephraim" refers to the northern kingdom of Israel, and "Judah" refers to the southern kingdom of Judah. However, Jacob is also mentioned. This use of "Jacob" makes us think of the earlier unified nation and may also refer to a future unified nation. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hosea 10:1

General Information:

Hosea is speaking about Israel.

Israel is a luxuriant vine that produces his fruit

Israel is spoken of as a vine that was very fruitful. For a while the people prospered and were strong. (See: [Metaphor](#))

a luxuriant vine

This vine produces more fruit than normal.

As his fruit increased ... As his land produced more

Both of these mean as the people prospered and grew stronger and richer.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [is a...vine](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [altars](#)
- [he improved](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)
- [vine](#)

ULT

¹ [Israel](#) is a luxuriant [vine](#) that produces his [fruit](#). The more his fruit increased, the more [altars](#) he built. As his land prospered, [he improved](#) his pillars.

UST

¹ Israel is like a vine that produces many bundles of grapes. But the more their fruit increased, the richer they became. With that money they made more stone columns in honor of their idols.

Hosea 10:2

Their heart is deceitful

The “heart” refers to the whole person, emphasizing their emotions and desires. Alternate translation: “They are deceitful” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

now they must bear their guilt

Here “guilt” is a metonym for the punishment that is associated with it. This punishment is spoken of as if it was a heavy load for them to carry. Alternate translation: “now is the time that Yahweh will punish them for their sins” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Their heart](#)
- [their altars](#)
- [he will destroy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [heart](#)
- [waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak](#)

ULT

² [Their heart](#) is deceitful; now they must bear their guilt. He will break down [their altars](#); [he will destroy](#) their pillars.

UST

² They are deceitful and cannot be trusted; but the time has come that they must pay for their sins. Yahweh will break their altars into pieces— the places where they gave sacrifices to their idols, and he promises to destroy those pillars beside which they worshiped their false gods.

Hosea 10:3

General Information:

Hosea is speaking about Israel.

and a king—what could he do for us?

The people will say that their kings could not have helped them.
Alternate translation: "Even if we had a king now, he could not help us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- king
- and a king
- we do...fear
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Yahweh
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

³ For now they will say, "We have no king, for we do not fear Yahweh, and a king—what could he do for us?"

UST

³ They say, "We have no king now because we did not honor or respect Yahweh. But even if we had a king, how could a king help us?"

Hosea 10:4

They speak empty words

Here “empty words” refers to lies. Alternate translation: “They speak lies” (See: [Idiom](#))

So justice springs up like poisonous weeds in the furrows of a field

What they people called justice in their laws and legal decisions is spoken of as if it were a plant sprouting up. Alternate translation: “So their decisions are not just; instead, they are harmful” (See: [Metaphor](#))

like poisonous weeds in the furrows of a field

Their lies and injustice spread throughout their nation and harm everyone like poisonous plants. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they make](#)
- [covenants](#)
- [judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [cut off, cut down](#)

ULT

⁴ They speak mere words, [they make covenants](#) with worthless oaths. So [judgment](#) springs up like poisonous weeds in the furrows of a field.

UST

⁴ The people of Israel make lying promises and false covenants; and because their promises are not kept, their sort of justice kills people, as poisonous weeds in a field would do.

Hosea 10:5

General Information:

Hosea is speaking about Israel.

Beth Aven

This was a city on the border between the northern kingdom of Israel and the tribe of Benjamin in the southern kingdom. See how you translated this in [Hosea 4:15](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria](#)
- [its people](#)
- [will mourn](#)
- [its splendor](#)
- [it has departed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [exile, exiled](#)
- [mourn, mourner, weeping](#)
- [people, people group](#)

ULT

⁵ The inhabitants of [Samaria](#) will be afraid for the calf of Beth Aven. Indeed, [its people will mourn](#) over it, as will its idolatrous priests who had rejoiced over it and over [its splendor](#), for [it has departed](#) from them.

UST

⁵ Those people of Samaria tremble with fear because of what happened to the calf idols at Beth Aven. Those people mourn over what happened to those idols, as did the priests who served them; they rejoiced over them and praised their splendor, but now those idols have been taken away from them.

Hosea 10:6

They will be carried to Assyria

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The Assyrians will carry them away" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Ephraim will be disgraced, and Israel will be ashamed of its idol

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "And the people of Israel will be very ashamed because they had worshiped idols" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

its idol

Many versions interpret the Hebrew word in this passage as "advice," "plans," or "intentions."

Translation Words - ULT

- [as tribute](#)
- [for the...king](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁶ The thing itself will be carried to Assyria [as tribute for the great king](#). [Ephraim](#) will receive shame, and [Israel](#) will be ashamed of its idol.

UST

⁶ Their idols will be carried to Assyria to be a gift for the great king. The people of Israel will be disgraced; they will be ashamed for having trusted in the advice they received by consulting idols.

Hosea 10:7

Samaria's king will be destroyed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The Assyrians will destroy the king of Samaria" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

like a chip of wood on the surface of the water

This means the king of Samaria will be as helpless as a small piece of wood that waves of the water toss back and forth. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The king of](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [the face of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁷ [The king of Samaria](#) will be cut off, like a twig on [the face of](#) the waters.

UST

⁷ The king of Samaria will die. He will be like a small piece of wood that floats away down a stream.

Hosea 10:8

The high places of wickedness will be destroyed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “The Assyrians will destroy Israel’s high places, where the people acted very wickedly” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The people will say to the mountains, “Cover us!” and to the hills, “Fall on us!”

People do not normally speak to things that cannot think or hear them. Translators may choose to have a different format for this passage if their languages do not allow such speech. Alternate translation: “The people will say, ‘We wish the mountains would cover us!’ and ‘We wish the hills would fall on us!’” (See: [Apostrophe](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sin of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [their altars](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

ULT

⁸ The high places of Aven, [the sin of Israel](#), will be destroyed. Thorns and thistles will grow up on [their altars](#). Then they will say to the mountains, “Cover us!” and to the hills, “Fall on us!”

UST

⁸ The hilltop places known for their wickedness—altars where the people worshiped idols—will all be destroyed. Thorns and thistles will grow and cover all the altars that were in Samaria. The people will beg the mountains and say, “Cover us!” and to the hills, “Fall on us!”

Hosea 10:9

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

days of Gibeah

This is probably a reference to the shocking actions of the tribe of Benjamin recounted in Judges 19-21. See how you translated this in [Hosea 9:9](#).

there you have remained

This passage probably means that the people of the present time continue to act in the same ways that their ancestors did at Gibeah. Alternate translation: “and you think just as they did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁹ “O Israel, you have sinned since the days of Gibeah; there they have remained. Will not the war against the sons of injustice overtake them in Gibeah?”

UST

⁹ People of Israel, since the days of Gibeah you have been sinning; it is as if you have been living there ever since then, because you think as they did. Enemies will attack you evildoers at Gibeah.

Will not war overtake the sons of wrong in Gibeah?

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that those in Gibeah who do wrong will certainly have to endure war. And this speaks of the people having to endure war when their enemies come as if war were a person that would catch up with them. Alternate translation: “War will certainly come on those who do wrong in Gibeah.” or “Enemies will certainly attack those who do wrong in Gibeah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

the sons of wrong

Here “son of” is an idiom that means “having the characteristic of.” Alternate translation: “those who do wrong” or “the evildoers” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- O Israel
- you have sinned
- they have remained
- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son

Hosea 10:10

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

double iniquity

This refers to the many sins of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- the nations

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group

ULT

¹⁰ When it is my desire, I will discipline them; and the nations will be gathered against them when they are bound for their double iniquity.

UST

¹⁰ Yahweh says, "When I decide to act, I will punish them. People groups will gather to fight against them; those people groups will capture them and put them in chains because of their many sins."

Hosea 10:11

Ephraim is a trained heifer that loves to thresh

A heifer loves to thresh because they can walk around freely without a yoke. Yahweh means that he has allowed the people of Israel to be free and have a pleasant life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will put a yoke on her fair neck. I will put a yoke on Ephraim

Here “yoke” refers to suffering and slavery. Yahweh has been kind to the people of Israel, but the people have been unfaithful to him. So he will punish them and send them away as slaves. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Judah will plow; Jacob will pull the harrow by himself

Here “Judah” refers to the people of the southern kingdom and “Jacob” is the people of the northern kingdom. This means God will cause difficult times for both kingdoms. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

harrow

a tool used to smooth the land and cover the seeds after plowing

Translation Words - ULT

- [that loves](#)
- [fair](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jacob](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [love, beloved](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

¹¹ Ephraim is a trained heifer [that loves](#) to thresh, and I spared her [fair](#) neck; but I will harness [Ephraim](#); [Judah](#) will plow; [Jacob](#) will harrow for himself.

UST

¹¹ Ephraim is like a trained calf that loves to thresh grain, separating out the grain from the chaff, and I did not put a heavy yoke on her tender neck. But now I will put Ephraim under that yoke, and Judah must plow. and Jacob must break up the ground with the harrow.

Hosea 10:12

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Sow righteousness for yourselves, and reap the fruit of covenant faithfulness

Righteousness and covenant faithfulness are spoken of as if they were crops that could be sown and harvested. The abstract nouns "righteousness" and "faithfulness" can be stated as "right" and "faithful." Alternate translation: "Plow, now, and do what is right, and you will reap the fruit of faithful love" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Break up your unplowed ground

When the ground is "unplowed" it is not ready to be planted. Yahweh means he wants the people to repent so they can start doing what is right. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [reap](#)
- [steadfast love](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [harvest, reap](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

¹² Sow for yourselves righteousness; [reap](#) in accordance with [steadfast love](#). Break up your fallow ground, for it is time [to seek Yahweh](#), until he comes and rains righteousness on you.

UST

¹² Plow, now, and do what is right, and you will reap the fruit of faithful love. Do the hard work of breaking up the unplowed ground, for now is the time for you to ask Yahweh to have mercy on you, so that he may come and rescue you because he does what is right.

Hosea 10:13

You have plowed wickedness; you reaped injustice

Wickedness and injustice are spoken of as if they were crops that could be sown and harvested. (See: [Metaphor](#))

You have eaten the fruit of deception

The result of deception are spoken of as if they were a food that could be eaten. Alternate translation: "You now suffer the consequences of having deceived each other" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you reaped](#)
- [You have eaten](#)
- [the fruit of](#)
- [your...warriors](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [devour](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)
- [harvest, reap](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

ULT

¹³ You have plowed wickedness; [you reaped](#) injustice. [You have eaten the fruit of](#) lies because you trusted in your way, in your many [warriors](#).

UST

¹³ You have sinned wickedly, and now you will have to bear the consequences. You told lies, and now you must suffer the results of the lies you told. You have trusted in your own abilities and wisdom, and you have relied on the soldiers in your armies.

Hosea 10:14

It will be as Shalman destroyed Beth Arbel on a day of battle

The coming war is being compared to a battle long ago.

Shalman

This is the name of a king who destroyed the city of Beth Arbel around 740 BC. His army murdered women and children in the attack. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Beth Arbel

This is likely the name of a city of the tribe of Naphtali. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- among your people
- will be destroyed
- their children

Translation Words - UST

- son
- people, people group
- waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak

ULT

¹⁴ Therefore a tumult will rise among your people, and all your fortresses will be destroyed, as Shalman destroyed Beth Arbel on the day of battle, when mothers were dashed to pieces with their children.

UST

¹⁴ The sound of war will be among your people; all your fortified cities will be destroyed. It will be as when Shalman destroyed Beth Arbel in battle, when mothers were killed while they were holding their children.

Hosea 10:15

So it will happen to you, Bethel, because of your great wickedness

Here "Bethel" represents the people who live there. The prophet addresses the people of Bethel as if they were there listening to him. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Apostrophe](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [O Bethel](#)
- [great](#)
- [your...wickedness](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁵ So it will be done to you, [O Bethel](#), because of your [great wickedness](#). At dawn [the king of Israel](#) will be completely cut off."

UST

¹⁵ That is what will be done to you, you people of the city of Bethel, because of all the evil things you have done. When the battle begins at dawn, the king of Israel will be destroyed; the enemy will kill him."

Hosea 11

Hosea 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues using the poetic form to communicate about Yahweh's relationship to the northern kingdom of Israel.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

This chapter contains an extended metaphor of Israel as a male child in the care of Yahweh, his parent. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Rhetorical question

Yahweh uses rhetorical questions to show his disappointment and anger at Israel's persistent rejection of him. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Hosea 11:1

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking of caring for Israel like a parent cares for a child.

When Israel was a young man

Yahweh is speaking about the people of Israel as if they were a young man. Yahweh is referring to when he first started his relationship with the nation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I called my son out of Egypt

“son” refers to the people of God the Father. Alternate translation: “I led my son out of Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [was a child](#)
- [I loved him](#)
- [I called](#)
- [my son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [love, beloved](#)
- [son](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹ “When [Israel was a child](#) I loved him, and out of Egypt I called [my son](#).”

UST

¹ Yahweh says, “When the nation of Israel was like a young man, I loved him. He was like a son to me, whom I called out of Egypt.”

Hosea 11:2

The more they were called, the more they went away from me

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The more I called them to be my people, the more they refused me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they called](#)
- [they went away](#)
- [They kept sacrificing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

² The more [they called](#) them, the more [they went away](#) from me. [They kept sacrificing](#) to the Baals and burning incense to idols. ^[1]

UST

² But the more I called out to them, the more they ran away. Day after day they offered their sacrifices to the idols named Baal, and they burned incense to honor them.

Hosea 11:3

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking about how he cared for Israel.

it was I who taught Ephraim to walk

Yahweh refers to Israel as a small child whom he taught to walk.
(See: [Metaphor](#))

lifted them up by their arms

This expression continues the metaphor. Alternate translation: “took care of them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [they did...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

³ Yet it was I who taught Ephraim to walk. I took them by their arms, but [they did](#) not [know](#) that I healed them.

UST

³ But it was I who taught them to do everything good, as a father teaches his son to walk. I was like a father, holding them by their little arms. But they did not understand that I was the one who was taking care of them.

Hosea 11:4

I led them with cords of humanity, with bands of love

Yahweh loved his people in ways that they as humans could understand and appreciate. (See: [Parallelism](#))

I was to them like someone who eased the yoke on their jaws

Yahweh is speaking of the nation of Israel as a hardworking animal whose work he made easier. (See: [Simile](#))

I bent down to them and fed them

This expression continues the metaphor in which Israel is pictured as a young child. It may mean that Yahweh provided for all their physical needs.

Translation Words - ULT

- [human kindness](#)
- [and fed them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Adam](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

⁴ I led them with cords of [human kindness](#), with bands of love. I was to them like someone who eased the yoke on their jaws, and I bent down to them [and fed them](#).

UST

⁴ With kindness I guided them, with the tender cords of human kindness I led them. I loved them so much that I guided them and led by my own hand. They worked very hard, like a yoke of oxen pulling a plow, but I made their yoke light and loosened its weight on their jaws, so they did not suffer pain.

Hosea 11:5

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking about Israel.

Will they not return to the land of Egypt?

This question means that the nation of Israel will once again be slaves as they were in Egypt. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Will Assyria not rule over them because they refuse to return to me?

The nation of Israel will be captives of Assyria as a result of their refusal to remain faithful to Yahweh. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- They will...return
- to return to me
- the land of
- Egypt
- will be their king

Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- restore, restoration
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, land
- king, kingship

ULT

⁵ They will not return to the land of Egypt; but Assyria--he will be their king, because they refused to return to me.

UST

⁵ But Israel will certainly return to Egypt, and Assyria will certainly rule over them, because they refused to turn back to me and worship me as their God.

Hosea 11:6

The sword will fall on their cities

Here “sword” represents the enemies of Israel who will destroy Israel's cities. (See: [Metonymy](#))

destroy the bars of their gates

Gates offered security to city inhabitants from their enemies, and the bars secured the closed gates. To destroy the bars meant to take away the people's security. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sword](#)
- [and devour them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [devour](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

⁶ [The sword](#) will whirl against their cities, and destroy the bars of their gates, [and devour them](#) because of their own plans.

UST

⁶ Their enemies will attack Israel's cities with swords; their enemies will destroy the bars that keep their gates closed and safe. Their enemies will destroy the people of Israel and put an end to all the plans they made.

Hosea 11:7

Though they call to the Most High

Here God is speaking about himself in the third person. It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "Though they call to me, the Most High" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

no one will help them

Yahweh will not allow anyone to help Israel because they turned away from him.

Translation Words - ULT

- My people
- they call

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- people, people group

ULT

⁷ My people are bent on turning away from me. Though they call to the Most High, he will not raise them up at all.

UST

⁷ My people are determined to turn away from me. They pretend to call out to me, the Most High God, but I will allow no one to help them.

Hosea 11:8

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking about Israel.

How can I give you up, Ephraim? How can I hand you over, Israel?

Yahweh loves his people so much that he will not totally destroy them. These questions may be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "I will not give you up, Ephraim. I will not hand you over, Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

How can I make you like Admah? How can I make you like Zeboyim?

Yahweh loves his people so much that he will not totally destroy them. These questions may be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "I do not want to act toward you as I acted toward Admah or make you like Zeboyim—cities that I destroyed along with Sodom" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

My heart has changed within me

Here "heart" represents God's will and decisions. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [O Ephraim](#)
- [O Israel](#)
- [My heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

⁸ How can I give you up, [O Ephraim](#)? How can I hand you over, [O Israel](#)? How can I make you like Admah? How can I make you like Zeboyim? [My heart](#) is turned over within me; all my compassions are aroused.

UST

⁸ But you people of Israel—dear Israel—I cannot abandon you. I cannot give you over to your enemies. I do not want to act toward you as I acted toward Admah or make you like Zeboyim— cities that I destroyed along with Sodom. I have changed my mind about punishing you; I earnestly long to have mercy on you.

Hosea 11:9

For I am God and not a man

God is not like people, who often decide very quickly to take revenge.

I will not come in wrath

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **wrath**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as “angry.” Alternate translation: “I will not come to you and be angry with you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will...again](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [I](#)
- [the Holy One](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

⁹ I will not execute my fierce anger; I will not [again](#) destroy [Ephraim](#). For I am God and not a man, [the Holy One](#) in your midst, and I will not come in wrath.

UST

⁹ I have decided not to punish you severely. I do not want to destroy you, the people of my Israel, whom I love. Human beings would easily decide to do that, but I am God, not human. I am the Holy One who lives among you; I will not come to you and be angry with you.

Hosea 11:10

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking about when he will restore his people.

They will follow Yahweh

Worshiping and honoring Yahweh is spoken of as if it were following him (See: [Metaphor](#))

he will roar like a lion

Yahweh making it possible for his people to return to his land is spoken of as if he were calling to his people. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They will go](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his sons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [They will go](#) after [Yahweh](#); he will roar like a lion. When he roars, [his sons](#) will come trembling from the west.

UST

¹⁰ They will live their lives following my commands. I will roar like a lion. And when I roar, my people will hear and will come trembling. They will come back to me from far away— from the west they will come back to me.

Hosea 11:11

They will come trembling like a bird ... like a dove

They will come home quickly as a bird returns to its nest. “Trembling” may refer to the fluttering of a bird’s wings. It may also signal the people’s feelings of humility and reverence for God (See: [Simile](#))

the declaration of Yahweh

“what Yahweh has declared” or “what Yahweh has solemnly said.” See how you translated this in [Hosea 2:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [from Egypt](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [their homes](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

¹¹ They will come trembling like a bird [from Egypt](#), like a dove from the land of [Assyria](#). I will settle them in [their homes](#) —this is the declaration of [Yahweh](#).

UST

¹¹ They will come fluttering into the land like a flock of birds coming up from Egypt. And some will be like pigeons that fly in from Assyria. I will let them live in their own homes once more, in the land of Israel. I, Yahweh, have promised this.”

Hosea 11:12

General Information:

Yahweh is talking about Israel and Judah.

Ephraim surrounds me with falsehood, and the house of Israel with deceit

Lies and deceitful acts are spoken of as if they were objects that the people of the northern kingdom surrounded Yahweh with. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

But Judah is still going about with me

Here “Judah” refers to the people who live there. This speaks of being loyal to God as “going about” with him. However, many versions have different interpretations of this difficult passage. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- the house of
- Israel
- But Judah
- is faithful
- the Holy One

Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Judah
- house, household

ULT

¹² Ephraim has surrounded me with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit. But Judah still goes about with God, and is faithful to the Holy One.”

11:2 ^[1]. The Hebrew text has .

UST

¹² “The people of Israel have continually lied to me. But the people of Judah they still obey me and are faithful to me, the Holy One.”

Hosea 12

Hosea 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jacob

There is a parallel between Jacob and the northern kingdom of Israel. In the same way that Jacob returned to Yahweh, the northern kingdom should repent of their idolatry and turn back to Yahweh. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Hosea 12:1

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

Ephraim feeds on the wind

Here “Ephraim” represents all the people of Israel. Also “wind” represents something that is useless or temporary. The people of Israel doing things that will not help them is spoken of as if they eat the wind. (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

follows after the east wind

East winds were very hot and destructive to the land. Here it represents anything that is destructive. The people doing things that will destroy themselves is spoken of as if they are following the east wind. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

carry olive oil to Egypt

The people of Israel sent olive oil as a present to the king of Egypt to try and persuade him to help them.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- on the wind
- They make
- a covenant
- Assyria
- and olive oil

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- spirit, wind, breath
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- cut off, cut down
- oil

ULT

¹ Ephraim feeds on the wind and pursues the east wind all day. He multiplies lies and violence. They make a covenant with Assyria and olive oil is carried to Egypt.

UST

¹ The people of Israel do only what is useless; they do only things that will destroy them. They tell more and more lies; they do more and more acts of violence. They make a treaty with Assyria, and they send olive oil to Egypt, to persuade those nations to protect them.

Hosea 12:2

Yahweh also has a lawsuit against Judah

Yahweh stating that the people of Judah have sinned against him and broken his covenant is spoken of as if Yahweh were accusing them in court. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Hosea 4:1](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

against Judah ... punish Jacob for what he has done ... repay him for his deeds

Here “Judah” and “Jacob” both represent the people of Judah. Alternate translation: “against the people of Judah ... punish them for what they have done ... repay them for their deeds” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

lawsuit

This is a complaint by one person against another person in a court of law. See how you translated this in [Hosea 2:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [he will repay](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Judea, Judah](#)

ULT

² [Yahweh](#) also has a dispute with [Judah](#), and will punish [Jacob](#) according to his ways; [he will repay](#) him according to his deeds.

UST

² Yahweh is also accusing the people of Judah of breaking his covenant. He will punish those descendants of Jacob for what they have done. He will pay them back; he will give them what they deserve.

Hosea 12:3

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking about Jacob the ancestor of the Israelites.

In the womb Jacob grasped his brother by the heel

Jacob wanted to take his brother's place as the firstborn, so he tried to keep his brother from being born first. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his brother](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

³ In the womb he took [his brother](#) by the heel, and in his manhood he struggled with [God](#).

UST

³ When Jacob was in his mother's womb, he grabbed his brother Esau's heel because he wanted to take his brother's place and be the firstborn. When Jacob grew up, he wrestled with God.

Hosea 12:4

He struggled with the angel and won

Jacob fought with an angel so that the angel would bless him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the angel](#)
- [at Bethel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Bethel](#)
- [messenger](#)

ULT

⁴ He struggled with [the angel](#) and prevailed. He wept and begged for his favor. He found him [at Bethel](#); and there he spoke with us.

UST

⁴ When the angel appeared to him, he struggled with him and won. Jacob cried out to the angel and begged him to bless him. Jacob found Yahweh at Bethel; it was there that Yahweh spoke with him.

Hosea 12:5

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

is his name to be called on

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Here “name” represents the entire character of God. Alternate translation: “is his name to which we pray” or “is his name by which we worship him” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the God of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

ULT

⁵ Yahweh, the God of hosts; Yahweh is his memorial name.

UST

⁵ This is Yahweh, the God of the angel armies! “Yahweh” is the name by which we should worship him.

Hosea 12:6

Keep covenantal faithfulness and justice

This refers to obeying God's law and doing what is right.

Translation Words - ULT

- must return
- to your God
- your God
- Keep
- covenantal love
- and justice

Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- God
- God
- restore, restoration
- statute
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

⁶ But you [must return to your God](#).
[Keep covenantal love and justice](#), and
 wait continually for [your God](#).

UST

⁶ Turn to your God! Obey his covenant
 and do what is right. Never stop
 trusting in your God for him to help
 you.

Hosea 12:7

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking about Israel.

false scales

The merchants use scales that do not accurately measure the weight of the money or products they are buying or selling.

they love to defraud

The merchants cheat their customers by lying to them and taking more money than they should.

Translation Words - ULT

- A merchant
- in his hands
- he loves

Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- Canaan, Canaanite
- hand

ULT

⁷ A merchant has false scales in his hands; he loves to oppress.

UST

⁷ The merchants are wicked; they use scales that give wrong weights and measures, so they can cheat those who buy from them.

Hosea 12:8

I have certainly become very rich; I have found wealth for myself

These two phrases mean the same thing and mean that the people of Ephraim consider themselves to be very prosperous. (See: [Parallelism](#))

I have found wealth

Becoming wealthy by trading is spoken of as finding wealth.
Alternate translation: "I have made much money" (See: [Metaphor](#))

they will not find any iniquity in me, anything that would be sin

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that the people of Ephraim consider themselves to be blameless. Learning that someone has sinned is spoken of as finding sin in that person. Alternate translation: "they will not discover that I have done anything sinful" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁸ [Ephraim](#) said, "Surely I have become rich; I have found wealth for myself. In all my labors they will not find [iniquity](#) in me, which would be sin."

UST

⁸ The people of Israel boast, "We are very rich, and we have found ways to make ourselves even more wealthy than we are now. In all our buying and selling, no one can see anything wrong in what we do."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)
- [iniquity](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [iniquity](#)
- [Ephraim](#), [Ephraimite](#)

Hosea 12:9

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel.

I am Yahweh your God from the land of Egypt

This could mean: (1) "I am Yahweh your God, who brought your ancestors from the land of Egypt" or (2) "I have been your God ever since you were in the land of Egypt" or (3) "I became your God when you were in the land of Egypt"

I will again make you live in tents

This could mean: (1) Yahweh is threatening to force the people of Israel from their homes and make them live in tents. So, here to "live in tents" would represent being sent into exile, or (2) it is a promise that after their exile the people will live in tents again, and Yahweh will take care of them as he did when the Israelites left Egypt. So, here "to live in tents" would represent a return to an ideal situation when Yahweh took care of his people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁹ "I am Yahweh your God from the land of Egypt. I will again make you live in tents, as in the days of the appointed festival.

UST

⁹ But Yahweh says, "I am Yahweh, whom you should worship; I am the one who brought your ancestors out of Egypt. I will force you away from your homes and make you live in tents again, just as when you live in tents for a few days every year when you celebrate the Festival of Shelters.

Translation Words - ULT

- [am Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [the appointed festival](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

Hosea 12:10

By the hand of the prophets

Here “hand” represents the one who carries out an action. Alternate translation: “Through the prophets” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the prophets](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [By the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

10 I spoke to [the prophets](#), and I multiplied visions. [By the hand of the prophets](#) I gave parables.”

UST

10 Many times I spoke to the prophets and gave them messages, for them to give to you; and I gave them many visions for you, and I gave them parables, for them to speak to you.”

Hosea 12:11

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

their altars will be like heaps of stone in the furrows of the fields

The altars where the people worshiped will be thrown down and become piles of stones. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [In Gilgal](#)
- [they sacrifice](#)
- [their altars](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [altar](#)
- [Gilgal](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

ULT

¹¹ If there is iniquity in Gilead, surely they are worthless. [In Gilgal they sacrifice](#) bulls; [their altars](#) also will be like heaps of stone beside the furrows of the fields.

UST

¹¹ The prophet says that if it is true that the people in the region of Gilead are wicked, then surely they are also worthless! In Gilgal they kill bulls and offer them to their idols; but these altars will be pulled down and turned into piles of stones in their fields.

Hosea 12:12

Jacob fled to the land of Aram; Israel worked in order to get a wife

Here "Jacob" and "Israel" refer to the same person. Jacob's name became Israel later in his life.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [he kept sheep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware](#)

ULT

¹² [Jacob](#) fled to the land of Aram; [Israel](#) worked for a wife; and for a wife, [he kept sheep](#).

UST

¹² Jacob fled to the land of Aram; he, whose name God would later change to Israel, worked many years so he could marry a woman. He took care of his uncle's sheep in order to marry her.

Hosea 12:13

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

by a prophet

That is, Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- from Egypt
- he was kept

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

ULT

¹³ Yahweh brought Israel up from Egypt by a prophet, and by a prophet he was kept.

UST

¹³ Yahweh used the prophet Moses to bring Israel out of Egypt, and he took care of them by the prophet who led them.

Hosea 12:14

bitterly

The anger that the people have caused in Yahweh is extremely great.

So his Lord will leave his blood on him

Here “blood” refers to the guilt incurred by people who murder others. God will not forgive their sins. (See: [Metonymy](#))

will turn back on him his disgrace

The idea of making someone suffer the results of his own actions is spoken of as if those actions were objects that were thrown back at him. Alternate translation: “will make him suffer from his own disgraceful actions” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)
- [his Lord](#)
- [will turn back](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

¹⁴ [Ephraim](#) has bitterly provoked to anger. So [his Lord](#) will leave his bloodguilt on him and [will turn back](#) his reproach to him.

UST

¹⁴ The people of Israel have caused Yahweh to become very angry; their Lord says that they are guilty of the death of many, and that their guilt remains on them. He will pay them back because they have insulted him with their shameful deeds.

Hosea 13

Hosea 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter uses poetry to communicate Yahweh's disgust and anger with the northern kingdom of Israel.

Special concepts in this chapter

"Israel" and "Ephraim" are terms used to speak about the people of the northern kingdom. Samaria was the capital of the northern kingdom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

This chapter makes it clear that the northern kingdom is going to be nearly decimated as a people. They will no longer exist as a nation.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

Hosea uses rhetorical questions throughout this chapter. They are not questions requesting information but rather questions indicating some emotion like anger or dissatisfaction. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Hosea 13:1

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

When Ephraim spoke

Hosea uses the term “Ephraim” to refer to the entire northern kingdom, although it was also the name of one of the ten tribes. Hosea seems to be speaking of a long-past time, when the northern kingdom was strong and honored, unlike at the present time. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

there was trembling

It is understood that people were trembling because they were afraid of Ephraim. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “there was trembling among the people” or “people trembled in fear” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

He exalted himself in Israel

Here “exalting” means to make oneself important. (See: [Metaphor](#))

but he became guilty because of Baal worship, and he died

When the people of Ephraim began worshiping Baal, they grew weak, and their enemies defeated them. Here “died” refers to the nation growing weak. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [and died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

ULT

¹ “When [Ephraim](#) spoke, there was trembling. He exalted himself [in Israel](#), but he became guilty through Baal [and died](#).”

UST

¹ Yahweh says, “When the leaders of Israel spoke, the people trembled; they were respected in Israel. But because they all worshiped Baal, they became guilty, and they died.”

Hosea 13:2

Now they sin more and more

Here “they” refers to the tribe of Ephraim and the entire nation of Israel, who followed Ephraim’s example.

These men who sacrifice kiss calves

Part of idol worship was kissing idol figures that were images of calves. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Those who sacrifice](#)
- [people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Adam](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

ULT

² And now they sin more and more, and they make for themselves cast metal images, idols skillfully made from their silver, all of them the work of craftsmen. They say of them, ‘[Those who sacrifice people](#) kiss calves.’

UST

² Now they sin more and more; they make cast metal figures out of silver to make them their idols. Those idols are statues that are very cleverly made, but those statues are made only by craftsmen. But other people see that the men of Israel sacrifice to these calf-idols and kiss them to worship them.

Hosea 13:3

So they will be like the morning clouds ... like the dew ... like the chaff ... like smoke out of a chimney

These expressions state that Israel is temporary and will soon disappear if they continue to worship idols instead of following Yahweh. (See: [Simile](#))

that is driven by the wind away

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that the wind blows away" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [that goes away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

³ Therefore they will be like the morning clouds, and like the dew [that goes away](#) early, like the chaff that swirls from the threshing floor, and like smoke from a window.

UST

³ So the people of Israel will disappear as quickly as the clouds that form in the morning, as quickly as the dew, when the sun dries it up. They will disappear as easily as the chaff that the wind blows away from the threshing place. They will disappear as easily as the smoke that goes out of the chimney.

Hosea 13:4

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking of his people as if they had been a flock of sheep that he found wandering in the wilderness. He says that he claimed them there for his own.

Translation Words - ULT

- am Yahweh
- your God
- and...god
- Egypt
- you were to know
- for...savior

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁴ But I am Yahweh your God from the land of Egypt; and you were to know no god except me, for there is no savior besides me.

UST

⁴ But I am Yahweh, whom you should worship; I am the one who brought you out of the land of Egypt. You must worship no other God; you must worship only Me. There is no one else who can rescue you.

Hosea 13:5

I knew you in the wilderness

Yahweh claimed the Hebrew people as his own special people, and he took care of them there.

Translation Words - ULT

- [knew you](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

⁵ I [knew you in the wilderness](#), in the land of drought.

UST

⁵ I took charge of you in the wilderness, in a desert where there was no water to drink.

Hosea 13:6

When you had pasture, then you became full

The image of sheep is continued with this expression.

your heart became lifted up

Becoming arrogant is spoken of as one's heart being lifted up.

Alternate translation: "you became proud" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their heart](#)
- [and...became lifted up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [heart](#)

ULT

⁶ When they had their pasture, then they became full; they were filled, and [their heart became lifted up](#). Therefore they forgot me.

UST

⁶ When I provided food for you, you ate as much as you wanted and were satisfied. But when you were no longer hungry, you became proud and forgot about me.

Hosea 13:7

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

like a lion ... like a leopard

These are wild animals that attack and kill other animals. Yahweh continues to say that he will destroy his people for their sins. (See: [Simile](#))

ULT

⁷ So I will become like a lion to them;
like a leopard I will lurk along the path.

UST

⁷ So I will attack you like a lion; I will
attack you like a leopard that waits
beside the road to suddenly jump on a
traveler.

Hosea 13:8

as a bear ... as a lion ... as a wild beast

These are wild animals that attack and kill other animals. Yahweh continues to say that he will destroy his people for their sins. (See: [Simile](#))

as a bear that is robbed of her cubs

The words “would attack” are left out because they are understood. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “like a bear would attack an animal that takes her cubs” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

as a lion

The words “would devour them” are left out because they are understood. Alternate translation: “as a lion would devour them” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their chests](#)
- [and...I will devour them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [devour](#)

ULT

⁸ I will encounter them like a bear robbed of her cubs. I will rip open [their chests](#), and there [I will devour them](#) like a lion, as a wild beast would tear them apart.

UST

⁸ I will come against you like a female bear when someone steals her cubs, and I will rip open your chests. Like a lion that attacks— as a wild animal would tear you apart.

Hosea 13:9

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

who will be able to help you?

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that no one will be able to help the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "there will be no one able to help you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [O Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

ULT

⁹ He destroys you, [O Israel](#); for you are against me, against your helper.

UST

⁹ You people of Israel, I will destroy you. No one will be able to help you.

Hosea 13:10

Where now is your king, that he may save you in all your cities? Where are your rulers, about whom you said to me, 'Give me a king and princes'?

Yahweh asks these questions to tell Israel that when they rebel against him, no king or ruler can help them. Only Yahweh can save them from destruction. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is your king](#)
- [a king](#)
- [that he may save you](#)
- [and your rulers](#)
- [and princes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [judge, judgment](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Where now [is your king, that he may save you](#) in all your cities, [and your rulers](#), about whom you said, 'Give me [a king and princes](#)'?

UST

¹⁰ You no longer have any king who can save you in any of your cities. You no longer have any of the rulers whom you asked me to give you.

Hosea 13:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a king

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingship

ULT

¹¹ I gave you a king in my anger, and I took him away in my wrath.

UST

¹¹ When I gave you a king, I gave him to you because I was angry with you. And because I was angry with you, I took your kings away.

Hosea 13:12

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Ephraim's iniquity has been stored up; his guilt has been stored up

These two phrases are similar and mean basically the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

has been stored up

The northern kingdom's iniquity and guilt are spoken of as if they were objects that could be kept for a purpose. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The iniquity of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [his sin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [iniquity](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

ULT

¹² [The iniquity of Ephraim](#) is bound up; [his sin](#) is stored up.

UST

¹² I have kept track of all the wicked deeds that you people of Israel have committed; I have recorded all your guilt.

Hosea 13:13

Pains of childbirth will come on him

Here Yahweh speaks of the suffering the people of Israel will suffer as if it were the pains of child birth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

but he is an unwise son, for when it is time to be born, he does not come out of the womb

Yahweh now describes the people of Israel as the baby to which the mother is giving birth. The baby is unwise because it does not want to be born. The people do not want to repent and obey Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is an...son](#)
- [at the opening of the womb](#)
- [unwise](#)
- [he does...present himself](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [wise men, advisor](#)

ULT

¹³ Pains of childbirth will come on him, but he [is an unwise son](#), for at the right time [he does not present himself at the opening of the womb](#).

UST

¹³ You are like a baby ready to be born, but you are foolish, because you are like a child who refuses to be born.

Hosea 13:14

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

Will I rescue them from the hand of Sheol?

Will I rescue them from death?

Yahweh uses these questions to tell the people of Israel that he is not going to save them from dying. He will certainly punish them. Alternate translation: "I will certainly not rescue them from death and from going down to Sheol." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Where, death, are your plagues? Where, Sheol, is your destruction?

Yahweh speaks to "death" and "Sheol" as if they were people. Yahweh uses questions to say that he will destroy the people soon. Alternate translation: "Now I will cause plagues and let the people of Israel die. I will destroy them and send them to Sheol." (See: [Personification](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Compassion is hidden from my eyes

Not to think about having compassion is spoken of as if compassion were hidden so that it cannot be seen. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **compassion**, you could express the same idea with an adjective. Alternate translation: "I have no compassion for them" or "I will not be compassionate towards them" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Will I ransom them](#)
- [Will I redeem them](#)
- [from the hand of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

14 Will I ransom them from the hand of Sheol? Will I redeem them from death? Where, O Death, are your plagues? Where, O Sheol, is your destruction? Compassion is hidden from my eyes."

UST

14 Will I really keep you from dying? Will I rescue you from dying? No! I will let you die I will let you perish. I have no more compassion left for you."

Hosea 13:15

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

his brothers

This expression seems to stand for the nations around the northern kingdom, especially Judah, the southern kingdom. (See: [Metaphor](#))

an east wind will come; the wind of Yahweh

A wind from the east was very hot and destructive. Here it refers to the armies from the east that Yahweh will send to destroy the people of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Ephraim's spring will dry up, and his well will have no water

Hosea continues to describe how God will punish the people of Israel. Here water represents life, vitality, and strength. (See: [Metaphor](#))

his storehouse

This refers to all of the peoples' possessions. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his brothers](#)
- [the wind of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his treasury](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [storehouse](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Though he flourishes among [his brothers](#), an east wind will come; [the wind of Yahweh](#) will come up from the wilderness. His fountain will dry up, and his spring will be parched. It will plunder [his treasury](#) of every precious object.

UST

¹⁵ The prophet Hosea says: "Even though you people of Israel are wealthier than those of Judah, the day is coming when Yahweh will destroy you. You will meet disaster. Your enemies will take everything valuable away from you."

Hosea 13:16

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

Samaria will be guilty, for she has rebelled against her God

Here "Samaria" refers to the people in the city of Samaria who are guilty of rebelling against God. (See: [Metonymy](#))

They will fall

Here to "fall" represents dying. (See: [Euphemism](#))

by the sword

Here the "sword" represents the enemy soldiers who used swords in battle. (See: [Metonymy](#))

their young children will be dashed to pieces, and their pregnant women will be ripped open

These phrases can be put into the active voice. Alternate translation: "the enemy will dash their young children to pieces, and they will rip open the pregnant women" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria](#)
- [she has rebelled](#)
- [against her God](#)
- [by the sword](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

16 [Samaria](#) will be held guilty, for [she has rebelled against her God](#). They will fall [by the sword](#); their young children will be dashed to pieces, and their pregnant women will be ripped open.

UST

16 The people of the city of Samaria are guilty because they have rebelled against God. Their enemies will kill them with swords. they will throw their children far down to the ground and kill them; they will rip open their pregnant women."

Hosea 14

Hosea 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This last chapter of Hosea ends with hope. In this chapter, Hosea calls for Israel to confess to Yahweh and repent. This chapter continues to be written in poetic form, using metaphors and other devices to communicate God's love for his sinful people. (See: [confess](#), [confession](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [love](#), [beloved](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [people of God](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Why are confession and repentance even suggested here for a people that Yahweh has already condemned to be destroyed? It is because this is a teaching that Yahweh is a merciful God who loves his people. (See: [mercy](#), [merciful](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Speaker

The use of first and second person in this chapter often signifies a change in speaker. In this chapter, Hosea is speaking to the northern kingdom to tell them that Yahweh loves them. There are several places in this chapter where the writer switches from the third person to the second or the first person. This may cause some confusion about who is speaking.

Hosea 14:1

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

for you have fallen because of your iniquity

Sinners are spoken of here as if it were falling. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Return
- O Israel
- Yahweh
- your God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- restore, restoration
- Yahweh

ULT

¹ Return, O Israel, to Yahweh your God, for you have stumbled because of your iniquity.

UST

¹ Israel, return to Yahweh your God! You have sinned because you have done wicked things.

Hosea 14:2

Take with you words

This probably means words of confession and praise. Alternate translation: "Confess your sins" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the fruit of our lips

What a person says is called the fruit of his lips. Modern versions have different translations of this difficult passage. Alternate translation: "our words and songs of praise" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and return](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [what is good](#)
- [the fruit of](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

² Take with you words [and return](#) to [Yahweh](#). Say to him, "Take away all [iniquity](#) and accept [what is good](#), so that we may offer [the fruit of](#) our lips. ^[1]

UST

² So now, return to Yahweh, and think about how you will confess your sins to him. Say this to him: "Take away all our sins, and accept us; please be kind to us. Please accept us back, so that we may praise you in our words and song.

Hosea 14:3

General Information:

Hosea is speaking

to the work of our hands

Here people are represented by their “hands” to refer to the people making things. Alternate translation: “to the idols we made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the fatherless person

This expression stands perhaps for the entire nation. It indicates God’s enormous compassion for his people.

finds compassion

Here the act of God having compassion is spoken of as if it were an object that someone experiencing that compassion had found. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **compassion**, you could express the same idea with an adjective. Alternate translation: “finds one who is compassionate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria](#)
- [will...save us](#)
- [horses](#)
- [our hands](#)
- [Our God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [hand](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

ULT

³ [Assyria](#) will not [save us](#); we will not ride on [horses](#). Neither will we say anymore to the work of [our hands](#), ‘[Our God](#),’ for in you the fatherless finds compassion.”

UST

³ Assyria cannot save us. It is useless for us to ride horses into battle. We will never again say, ‘You are our gods’ to the idols we have made with our own hands. Even children with no fathers look to you, Yahweh, and they find that you are kind to them.”

Hosea 14:4

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

I will heal their turning away

Stopping the people from turning away from God is spoken of as if he were healing them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

their turning away

The failure of the people to obey God is spoken of as if they had physically turned away from him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will love them](#)
- [freely](#)
- [has turned away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

ULT

⁴ "I will heal their apostasy; [I will love them freely](#), for my anger [has turned away](#) from them.

UST

⁴ Yahweh says, "I will forgive these people for having stopped honoring me; I will love them without ceasing, because I have decided to stop being angry at them.

Hosea 14:5

I will be like the dew to Israel; he will blossom like the lily

God is spoken of as if he were dew that brought needed moisture to plants, and Israel is spoken of as if it were one person, and as if he were a flower that could blossom. (See: [Simile](#) and [Metaphor](#))

take root like a cedar in Lebanon

The picture of Israel in the form of a plant is continued here, but this time in the form of a tall cedar tree in Lebanon, which was known for such trees. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

ULT

⁵ I will be like the dew [to Israel](#); he will blossom like the lily and take root like the cedar of Lebanon.

UST

⁵ I will help the people of Israel as the dew helps the ground. They will prosper like the lilies bloom. They will become as strong as the cedar trees in Lebanon.

Hosea 14:6

His branches will spread out ... like the cedars in Lebanon

This passage continues the same image. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [will sprout](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

⁶ His shoots [will sprout](#); his beauty will be like the olive trees, and his fragrance like the cedars of Lebanon.

UST

⁶ They will be like trees whose branches spread out. They will be as beautiful as the olive trees, and they will please others as much as the fragrant cedar trees in Lebanon.

Hosea 14:7

General Information:

Yahweh is speaking.

The people who live in his shade will return

The people of Israel will once again live protected by God. Israel is spoken of as living in his shade. (See: [Metaphor](#))

they will revive like grain and blossom like vines

Israel's new prosperity is spoken of in agricultural terms. (See: [Simile](#))

His fame will be like the wine of Lebanon

Just as Lebanon's wine was famous, so Israel will be famous.

Alternate translation: "People everywhere will know about the nation of Israel" (See: [Simile](#))

ULT

⁷ Those who live in his shadow will return; [they will revive like the grain](#) and blossom like the vine. His fame will be like the wine of [Lebanon](#).

UST

⁷ They will return and live under the protection that Israel has from me; I will protect them from hardship. They will be successful like a field of grain that grows well, like grapevines that are growing well. They will become as famous as the wine that people produce in the land of Lebanon.

Translation Words - ULT

- [they will revive](#)
- [like the grain](#)
- [Lebanon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)

Hosea 14:8

what more have I to do with idols?

This passage signifies that God will stop the people of Israel from worshipping idols any longer. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

a cypress whose leaves are always green

A cypress is a tree whose leaves stay green all year. This represents Yahweh and his blessings on Israel. (See: [Simile](#))

from me comes your fruit

Here “fruit” represents every good thing that comes from Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [O Ephraim](#)
- [who answer](#)
- [your fruit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)

ULT

⁸ [O Ephraim](#), what more have I to do with idols? It is I [who answer](#) and look after him. I am like a luxuriant cypress; from me comes [your fruit](#).”

UST

⁸ You people of Israel, I will completely stop you from worshipping idols. It is I, Yahweh, who will take care of you. No idol can do that. I am like a cypress tree that grows and stays fresh the entire year; all your good gifts come from me.”

Hosea 14:9

General Information:

Hosea the prophet is speaking.

Who is wise that he may understand these things? Who understands these things so that he may know them?

The prophet uses these questions to say that wise people will understand and listen to what has been said to them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))

For the ways of Yahweh are right, and the righteous will walk in them

Yahweh's commandments are spoken of as ways to walk in. (See: [Metaphor](#))

stumble

Disobeying Yahweh is spoken of as if it were stumbling while walking. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- is wise
- whoever is discerning
- let him know them
- Yahweh
- are right
- will walk

Translation Words - UST

- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- understand, understanding, thinking
- walk, walked
- wise men, advisor

ULT

⁹ Whoever is wise, let him understand these things; whoever is discerning, let him know them. For the ways of Yahweh are right, and the righteous will walk in them, but transgressors will stumble in them.

14:2 ^[1] represents the interpretation of some ancient versions. The Hebrew text has . Some modern versions interpret this to mean, .

UST

⁹ Every wise person will understand the things about which I have written; those who have understanding will study these things and pay careful attention to them. The way in which Yahweh wants us to live is right. Those who do what is right live by them. The rebellious people, however, sin, unable to obey him.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 32

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:19](#); [4:2](#); [7:16](#); [10:12](#); [11:9](#); [13:14](#); [14:3](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:10](#); [1:11](#); [2:1](#); [2:9](#); [4:3](#); [4:6](#); [5:11](#); [6:11](#); [7:4](#); [7:8](#); [8:4](#); [8:8](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [11:2](#); [12:5](#); [13:3](#); [13:8](#); [13:16](#))

Apostrophe

Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: “This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. ‘See, ... they will burn people’s bones on **it**.’”

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

(Go back to: [Hosea 10:8](#); [10:15](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:11](#); [2:3](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [7:1](#); [9:7](#); [12:3](#); [12:4](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [14:2](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**.”

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**.”

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only 22 liters³.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] one bath
[2] one homer
[3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:2](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](https://en.ta.man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes)

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:12](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, “Master!**
We are perishing!”

(Go back to: [Hosea 5:8](#); [9:6](#); [9:7](#); [10:6](#); [12:2](#); [12:8](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)



He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Hosea 13:8](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

"They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [Hosea 13:16](#))

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, “**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.””

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:1](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant,** used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-you]]

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:13](#); [4:10](#); [4:16](#); [8:5](#); [9:6](#); [11:7](#))

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife;**
the one who touches her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

- (1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
- (2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
- (3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
- (4) Use the plural form, as in "people."

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:8](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said,
“For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** ¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hosea](#); [Hosea 1:1](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [2:23](#); [4:15](#); [Notes](#); [5:1](#); [5:8](#); [9:10](#); [Notes](#); [10:5](#); [10:14](#); [Notes](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
 - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
 - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:12](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:12](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

█ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

█ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

█ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

█ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

█ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

█ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

█ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

█ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

█ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

█ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

█ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

█ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:1](#); [5:5](#); [6:2](#); [7:5](#); [8:7](#); [10:4](#); [10:9](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see *Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns* and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad.** (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick.**

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay.** You are our **potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood.** You are our **carver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string.** You are the **weaver;** and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hosea](#); [Hosea 1 General Notes](#); [1:2](#); [1:4](#); [Notes](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:10](#); [2:12](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [4:19](#); [Notes](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:10](#); [5:11](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [5:15](#); [Notes](#); [6:5](#); [6:11](#); [Notes](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:4](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [8:1](#); [8:5](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [9:16](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:4](#); [10:9](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [Notes](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:10](#); [11:12](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:8](#); [12:14](#); [13:1](#); [13:6](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [Notes](#); [14:1](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment?**”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:5](#); [2:5](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:18](#); [3:5](#); [Notes](#); [4:2](#); [4:7](#); [4:17](#); [4:19](#); [5:3](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [7:6](#); [7:9](#); [7:16](#); [8:5](#); [9:2](#); [9:6](#); [9:13](#); [9:15](#); [10:2](#); [10:11](#); [10:15](#); [11:6](#); [11:8](#); [11:12](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:5](#); [12:9](#); [12:14](#); [13:16](#); [14:2](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:2](#); [6:2](#); [8:12](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Hosea 6:2](#))

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:6](#); [5:3](#); [5:11](#); [6:1](#); [9:5](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [11:4](#); [11:12](#); [12:8](#); [13:12](#); [13:14](#); [14:9](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:22](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [5:5](#); [5:7](#); [7:10](#); [9:2](#); [9:4](#); [13:14](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:16](#); [6:4](#); [8:5](#); [9:5](#); [9:14](#); [10:3](#); [10:9](#); [Notes](#); [11:5](#); [11:8](#); [Notes](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:14](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#))

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metaphor

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:10](#); [2:3](#); [4:16](#); [Notes](#); [5:3](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:14](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [7:4](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:16](#); [8:9](#); [9:4](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [10:4](#); [10:7](#); [11:4](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [12:11](#); [13:3](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:1](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:17](#); [4:17](#); [5:3](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [7:2](#); [7:8](#); [9:8](#); [9:13](#); [10:2](#); [12:1](#); [12:10](#); [13:1](#); [14:3](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 35

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), descendant, Eve, image of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:12](#); [11:4](#); [13:2](#))

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), sexual immorality, sleep with, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 4:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 5:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 2:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:6** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:2** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:7** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

(Go back to: [Hosea 2 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:3](#))

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Babylon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:1
- 2 Kings 16:20
- Hosea 1:1
- Isaiah 1:1
- Isaiah 7:4
- Matthew 1:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0271

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:1](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:11](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:8](#); [12:11](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:10](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:4](#); [1:11](#); [2:3](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [4:9](#); [8:13](#); [10:9](#); [13:13](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
- When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
- The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone." (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:3](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

(Go back to: [Hosea 5:13](#); [7:11](#); [8:9](#); [11:11](#); [12:1](#); [14:3](#))

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G29150, G29160

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:2](#))

barren, dry

Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:5
- Galatians 4:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 3:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G06920, G47230

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:3](#))

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [Hosea 5:8](#))

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abraham, [altar](#), [Jacob](#), Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(Go back to: [Hosea 10:15](#); [12:4](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:4](#))

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 3:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 2:4
- Psalms 58:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G51150

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:18](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:5](#); [9:4](#))

bride, bridal

Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term “bride” is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the “bridegroom” for the Church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: bridegroom, church)

Bible References:

- Exodus 22:16
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3618, G35650

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:13](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:1](#); [12:3](#); [13:15](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:6](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:4](#); [1:6](#); [1:9](#); [2:16](#); [7:7](#); [7:11](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:7](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

(Go back to: [Hosea 12:7](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, [exile](#), prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [Hosea 6:11](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:14](#); [9:9](#))

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [Hosea 14 General Notes](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hosea](#); [Hosea 1 General Notes](#); [2:18](#); [Notes](#); [6:7](#); [8:1](#); [Notes](#); [10:4](#); [12:1](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:1](#); [6:4](#); [6:6](#); [10:12](#); [12:6](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [Hosea 14:2](#))

cut off, cut down

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:18](#); [8:4](#); [10:4](#); [12:1](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:5](#))

deceive, lie, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:2](#))

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Hosea 6:6](#))

deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:7](#); [2:9](#); [13:4](#); [13:10](#); [14:3](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:10](#); [13:5](#))

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:12](#); [4:8](#); [4:10](#); [5:7](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [10:13](#); [11:4](#); [11:6](#); [13:8](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:3](#); [6:5](#); [9:13](#); [9:16](#); [13:1](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as "land" when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term "earth" is often paired with the term "heaven" as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated "land" when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as "the land of Canaan."
- The term "earthly" is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:2](#); [1:11](#); [2:18](#); [2:21](#); [4:1](#); [4:3](#); [6:3](#); [11:5](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:15](#); [7:11](#); [7:16](#); [8:13](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [11:5](#); [11:11](#); [12:9](#); [12:13](#); [13:4](#))

ephod

Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:18-19
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Hosea 3:4
- Judges 8:27
- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0641, H0642, H0646

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:4](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joseph, Manasseh, [kingdom of Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:17](#); [5:3](#); [5:9](#); [5:11](#); [5:13](#); [6:4](#); [7:1](#); [7:8](#); [7:11](#); [8:9](#); [8:11](#); [9:3](#); [9:8](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:16](#); [10:6](#); [10:11](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:12](#); [12:1](#); [12:8](#); [12:14](#); [13:1](#); [13:12](#); [14:8](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Hosea 7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:15](#); [9:15](#); [10:15](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, worship, [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [Hosea 13:6](#))

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term "exile" refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The "Babylonian exile" (or "the exile") is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase "the exiles" refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "exile" could also be translated as to "send away" or to "force out" or to "banish."
- The term "the exile" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the sent away time" or "the time of banishment" or "the time of forced absence" or "banishment."
- Ways to translate "the exiles" could include "the exiled people" or "the people who were banished" or "the people exiled to Babylon."

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 2:25-26
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G39270

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:10](#); [10:5](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [Hosea 5:15](#); [7:2](#); [10:7](#))

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(**Go back to:** [Introduction to Hosea](#); [Hosea 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [4:1](#); [5:9](#); [11:12](#))

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [Hosea 10:1](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Hosea 10:3](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:11](#); [9:5](#); [12:9](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:12](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:14](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:13](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:10](#))

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: burnt offering, Ezra, [feast](#), [grain offering](#), guilt offering, [law](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 7:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

(Go back to: [Hosea 14:4](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, [grain](#), [grape](#), Holy Spirit, [vine](#), womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:16](#); [10:1](#); [10:13](#); [14:8](#))

Gilgal

Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Elisha](#), [Jericho](#), [Jordan River](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 7:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:1-2
- Hosea 4:15
- Judges 2:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:15](#); [12:11](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:7](#); [9:11](#); [10:5](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:7](#); [2:23](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [4:1](#); [4:6](#); [4:12](#); [5:4](#); [6:6](#); [7:10](#); [8:2](#); [8:6](#); [9:1](#); [9:8](#); [9:17](#); [12:3](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:9](#); [13:4](#); [13:16](#); [14:1](#); [14:3](#))

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hosea](#); [Hosea 7 General Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:8; 8:4](#))

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: righteous, prosper, [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:7](#); [3:5](#); [4:13](#); [8:3](#); [10:11](#); [14:2](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [Hosea 10:6](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:22](#); [7:14](#); [9:1](#); [14:7](#))

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:1](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, right hand, honor, bless)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:10](#); [7:5](#); [12:7](#); [12:10](#); [13:14](#); [14:3](#))

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term "reap" means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [Hosea 6:11](#); [8:7](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#))

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: chief, [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:11](#); [4:13](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:14](#); [4:11](#); [7:6](#); [7:11](#); [7:14](#); [10:2](#); [11:8](#); [13:6](#); [13:8](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:18](#); [2:21](#); [4:3](#); [7:12](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Hosea 11:9](#); [11:12](#))

hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, confidence, [good](#), obey, trust, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:15](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:7](#); [14:3](#))

house, household

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshipped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: descendant, house of God, tabernacle, [temple](#), house of David, [kingdom of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:4](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [5:1](#); [5:12](#); [5:14](#); [8:1](#); [9:4](#); [9:15](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#))

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:8](#); [7:1](#); [8:13](#); [9:7](#); [9:9](#); [12:8](#); [13:12](#); [14:2](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: Hosea 1:1; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:10; 1:11; 3:1; 3:4; 3:5; 4:1; 4:15; 4:16; 5:1; 5:3; 5:5; 5:9; 6:10; 7:1; 7:10; 8:2; 8:3; 8:6; 8:8; 8:14; 9:1; 9:7; 9:10; 10:1; 10:6; 10:8; 10:9; 10:15; 11:1; 11:8; 11:12; 12:12; 12:13; 13:1; 13:9; 14:1; 14:5)

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [Hosea 10:11](#); [12:2](#); [12:12](#))

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, Ahaziah, Baal, Elisha, Jehoshaphat, [Jehu](#), Jezebel, Joram, Judah, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:35
- 1 Kings 16:2
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 10:9
- Hosea 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3058

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:4](#))

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), Judah, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:2
- 2 Chronicles 9:29
- 2 Kings 3:1-3
- Amos 1:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:9 Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:1](#))

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, [Ahaz](#), Gideon, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:5
- Isaiah 1:1
- Judges 9:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

([Go back to: Hosea 1:1](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Hosea 7:3](#); [9:1](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, [Judea](#), [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Hosea 5:13](#); [8:14](#); [11:12](#))

Judea, Judah

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

(**Go back to:** [Hosea 1:1](#); [1:7](#); [1:11](#); [4:15](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:14](#); [6:4](#); [6:11](#); [10:11](#); [12:2](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hosea](#); [Hosea 2:19](#); [5:11](#); [10:4](#); [13:10](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [Hosea 14:9](#))

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [5:1](#); [5:13](#); [7:3](#); [7:5](#); [7:7](#); [8:10](#); [10:3](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:15](#); [11:5](#); [13:10](#); [13:11](#))

kingdom of Israel

Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Israel](#), Judah, Jerusalem, kingdom, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:18
- Jeremiah 5:11
- Jeremiah 9:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **18:11** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **20:1** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **20:2** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H4410, H4467, H4468

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hosea](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:8](#); [2:20](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:9](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [7:9](#); [8:2](#); [8:4](#); [9:7](#); [11:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#); [14:9](#))

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:6](#); [8:1](#); [8:12](#))

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: cedar, cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Psalms 29:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: [Hosea 14:7](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:10](#); [4:8](#); [4:15](#); [6:2](#); [14:7](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:4](#); [12:14](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:10](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [3:1](#); [4:18](#); [9:1](#); [10:11](#); [11:1](#); [12:7](#); [Notes](#); [14:4](#))

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:19](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [Hosea 12:4](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [Hosea 10:13](#))

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:3](#); [10:5](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:4](#); [1:6](#); [1:9](#); [2:17](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:8](#); [8:10](#); [9:17](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:15](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:8](#); [12:1](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:5](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Hosea 5:1](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [Hosea 5 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [2:1](#); [2:23](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [6:11](#); [7:8](#); [9:1](#); [10:5](#); [10:10](#); [10:14](#); [11:7](#))

persecute

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [Hosea 6:3](#); [8:3](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:8](#); [2:14](#); [5:14](#); [11:9](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:4](#); [4:6](#); [5:1](#); [6:9](#); [Notes](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [demon](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [ruler](#), [Satan](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:4](#); [5:10](#); [7:3](#); [7:5](#); [7:16](#); [8:10](#); [9:15](#); [13:10](#))

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, [holy](#), clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

(Go back to: [Hosea 8:10](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:5](#); [9:7](#); [9:8](#); [12:10](#))

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshipping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), sexual immorality, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:2](#); [2:5](#); [3:3](#); [4:10](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:18](#); [5:3](#); [9:1](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:12](#))

raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [Hosea 7:4](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [Hosea 13:16](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [Hosea 7:13](#); [13:14](#))

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, [sin](#), turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

(Go back to: [Hosea 12 General Notes; Notes](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:9](#); [4:9](#); [5:4](#); [5:15](#); [7:10](#); [7:16](#); [8:13](#); [11:5](#); [11:9](#); [12:2](#); [12:6](#); [12:14](#); [14:1](#); [14:4](#))

return, turn back

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:7](#); [6:1](#); [9:3](#); [14:2](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:11](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), burnt offering, drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, [freewill offering](#) peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [Hosea 3:4](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [6:6](#); [8:13](#); [9:4](#); [11:2](#); [12:11](#); [13:2](#))

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

(Go back to: [Hosea 7:1](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [10:5](#); [10:7](#); [13:16](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), punish, [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [Hosea 7 General Notes](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:7](#); [3:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:15](#); [10:12](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: bondage, works, obey, [house](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [Hosea 11:1](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:8](#); [3:2](#); [8:4](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [Hosea 4 General Notes](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [8:13](#); [Notes](#); [9:9](#); [Notes](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [13:12](#); [Notes](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:1](#); [1:3](#); [1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [2:4](#); [3:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [4:1](#); [4:6](#); [5:7](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [10:9](#); [10:14](#); [11:1](#); [11:10](#); [13:13](#))

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:12](#); [4:19](#); [5:4](#); [8:7](#); [12:1](#); [13:15](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [Hosea 6:5](#); [12:6](#))

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: consecrate, dedicate, famine, [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Psalms 33:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0214, H0618, H0624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G05960

(Go back to: [Hosea 13:15](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [Hosea 7:9](#); [7:15](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:18](#); [7:16](#); [11:6](#); [13:16](#))

temple, house, house of God

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [Hosea 6:10](#); [8:14](#); [9:8](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:21](#); [2:22](#); [14:8](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [Hosea 9:1](#); [9:2](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [Hosea 5:8](#); [8:1](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, [know](#), wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [Hosea 4:14](#); [14:9](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(**Go back to:** [Hosea 2:12](#); [10:1](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:15](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [3:1](#); [5:6](#); [5:11](#); [5:15](#); [6:1](#); [6:4](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [9:6](#); [11:2](#); [11:10](#); [13:3](#); [14:6](#); [14:9](#))

waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 6:6
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:8
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 7:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G06840, G12870, G20490, G26730

(Go back to: [Hosea 10:2](#); [10:14](#))

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [Hosea 12:6](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [Hosea 2:8](#); [2:22](#); [4:11](#); [9:4](#))

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term “wise men” simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term “wise men” often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term “wise men” simply means people who are wise, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

(Go back to: [Hosea 13:13](#); [14:9](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [Hosea 7:5](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: [Hosea 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:4](#); [1:7](#); [2:13](#); [2:16](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [4:1](#); [4:10](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [5:4](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [6:1](#); [6:3](#); [7:10](#); [8:1](#); [8:13](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:14](#); [10:3](#); [10:12](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [12:2](#); [12:5](#); [12:9](#); [12:13](#); [13:4](#); [13:15](#); [14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:9](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Kailey Gregory
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College
Leonard Smith
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
David Trombold, M. Div.
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)

Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)

Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)

Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)